สำนักงานการบินพลเรือนแห่งประเทศไทย
The Civil Aviation Authority of Thailand

THAILAND CIVIL AVIATION REGULATION

Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material to - TCAR OPS Part NCC

Non-Commercial Air Operations with Complex Motor Powered Aircraft

Issue 01

Revision 00

Date 30 SEPTEMBER 2021

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Revision No.	Date (DD-MMM-YYYY)	Subject	Insert By (Department-Division)
00	30 SEP 2021	Initial Issue	OPS

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

LIST OF EFFECTIVE PAGES

Change and amendment bar is placed against each paragraph affected.

Page No.	Revision No.	Date	Page No.	Revision No.	Date
1	00	30 SEP 2021	41	00	30 SEP 2021
2	00	30 SEP 2021	42	00	30 SEP 2021
3	00	30 SEP 2021	43	00	30 SEP 2021
4	00	30 SEP 2021	44	00	30 SEP 2021
5	00	30 SEP 2021	45	00	30 SEP 2021
6	00	30 SEP 2021	46	00	30 SEP 2021
7	00	30 SEP 2021	47	00	30 SEP 2021
8	00	30 SEP 2021	48	00	30 SEP 2021
9	00	30 SEP 2021	49	00	30 SEP 2021
10	00	30 SEP 2021	50	00	30 SEP 2021
11	00	30 SEP 2021	51	00	30 SEP 2021
12	00	30 SEP 2021	52	00	30 SEP 2021
13	00	30 SEP 2021	53	00	30 SEP 2021
14	00	30 SEP 2021	54	00	30 SEP 2021
15	00	30 SEP 2021	55	00	30 SEP 2021
16	00	30 SEP 2021	56	00	30 SEP 2021
17	00	30 SEP 2021	57	00	30 SEP 2021
18	00	30 SEP 2021	58	00	30 SEP 2021
19	00	30 SEP 2021	59	00	30 SEP 2021
20	00	30 SEP 2021	60	00	30 SEP 2021
21	00	30 SEP 2021	61	00	30 SEP 2021
22	00	30 SEP 2021	62	00	30 SEP 2021
23	00	30 SEP 2021	63	00	30 SEP 2021
24	00	30 SEP 2021	64	00	30 SEP 2021
25	00	30 SEP 2021	65	00	30 SEP 2021
26	00	30 SEP 2021	66	00	30 SEP 2021
27	00	30 SEP 2021	67	00	30 SEP 2021
28	00	30 SEP 2021	68	00	30 SEP 2021
29	00	30 SEP 2021	69	00	30 SEP 2021
30	00	30 SEP 2021	70	00	30 SEP 2021
31	00	30 SEP 2021	71	00	30 SEP 2021
32	00	30 SEP 2021	72	00	30 SEP 2021
33	00	30 SEP 2021	73	00	30 SEP 2021
34	00	30 SEP 2021	74	00	30 SEP 2021
35	00	30 SEP 2021	75	00	30 SEP 2021
36	00	30 SEP 2021	76	00	30 SEP 2021
37	00	30 SEP 2021	77	00	30 SEP 2021
38	00	30 SEP 2021	78	00	30 SEP 2021
39	00	30 SEP 2021	79	00	30 SEP 2021
40	00	30 SEP 2021	80	00	30 SEP 2021

Page No.	Revision No.	Date
81	00	30 SEP 2021
82	00	30 SEP 2021
83	00	30 SEP 2021
84	00	30 SEP 2021
85	00	30 SEP 2021
86	00	30 SEP 2021
87	00	30 SEP 2021
88	00	30 SEP 2021
89	00	30 SEP 2021
90	00	30 SEP 2021
91	00	30 SEP 2021
92	00	30 SEP 2021
93	00	30 SEP 2021
94	00	30 SEP 2021
95	00	30 SEP 2021
96	00	30 SEP 2021
97	00	30 SEP 2021
98	00	30 SEP 2021
99	00	30 SEP 2021
100	00	30 SEP 2021
101	00	30 SEP 2021
102	00	30 SEP 2021
103	00	30 SEP 2021
104	00	30 SEP 2021
105	00	30 SEP 2021
106	00	30 SEP 2021
107	00	30 SEP 2021
108	00	30 SEP 2021
109	00	30 SEP 2021
110	00	30 SEP 2021
111	00	30 SEP 2021
112	00	30 SEP 2021
113	00	30 SEP 2021
114	00	30 SEP 2021
115	00	30 SEP 2021
116	00	30 SEP 2021
117	00	30 SEP 2021
118	00	30 SEP 2021
119	00	30 SEP 2021
120	00	30 SEP 2021

Page No.	Revision No.	Date
121	00	30 SEP 2021
122	00	30 SEP 2021
123	00	30 SEP 2021
124	00	30 SEP 2021
125	00	30 SEP 2021
126	00	30 SEP 2021
127	00	30 SEP 2021
128	00	30 SEP 2021
129	00	30 SEP 2021
130	00	30 SEP 2021
131	00	30 SEP 2021
132	00	30 SEP 2021
133	00	30 SEP 2021
134	00	30 SEP 2021
135	00	30 SEP 2021
136	00	30 SEP 2021
137	00	30 SEP 2021
138	00	30 SEP 2021
139	00	30 SEP 2021
140	00	30 SEP 2021
141	00	30 SEP 2021
142	00	30 SEP 2021
143	00	30 SEP 2021
144	00	30 SEP 2021
145	00	30 SEP 2021
146	00	30 SEP 2021
147	00	30 SEP 2021
148	00	30 SEP 2021
149	00	30 SEP 2021
150	00	30 SEP 2021
151	00	30 SEP 2021
152	00	30 SEP 2021
153	00	30 SEP 2021
154	00	30 SEP 2021
155	00	30 SEP 2021
156	00	30 SEP 2021
157	00	30 SEP 2021
158	00	30 SEP 2021
159	00	30 SEP 2021
160	00	30 SEP 2021

Page No.	Revision No.	Date
161	00	30 SEP 2021
162	00	30 SEP 2021
163	00	30 SEP 2021
164	00	30 SEP 2021
165	00	30 SEP 2021
166	00	30 SEP 2021
167	00	30 SEP 2021
168	00	30 SEP 2021
169	00	30 SEP 2021
170	00	30 SEP 2021
171	00	30 SEP 2021
172	00	30 SEP 2021
173	00	30 SEP 2021
174	00	30 SEP 2021
175	00	30 SEP 2021
176	00	30 SEP 2021
177	00	30 SEP 2021
178	00	30 SEP 2021
179	00	30 SEP 2021
180	00	30 SEP 2021
181	00	30 SEP 2021
182	00	30 SEP 2021
183	00	30 SEP 2021
184	00	30 SEP 2021
185	00	30 SEP 2021
186	00	30 SEP 2021
187	00	30 SEP 2021
188	00	30 SEP 2021
189	00	30 SEP 2021
190	00	30 SEP 2021
191	00	30 SEP 2021
192	00	30 SEP 2021
193	00	30 SEP 2021
194	00	30 SEP 2021
195	00	30 SEP 2021
196	00	30 SEP 2021
197	00	30 SEP 2021
198	00	30 SEP 2021
199	00	30 SEP 2021
200	00	30 SEP 2021

Page No.	Revision No.	Date
201	00	30 SEP 2021
202	00	30 SEP 2021
203	00	30 SEP 2021
204	00	30 SEP 2021
205	00	30 SEP 2021
206	00	30 SEP 2021
207	00	30 SEP 2021
208	00	30 SEP 2021
209	00	30 SEP 2021
210	00	30 SEP 2021
211	00	30 SEP 2021
212	00	30 SEP 2021
213	00	30 SEP 2021
214	00	30 SEP 2021
215	00	30 SEP 2021
216	00	30 SEP 2021
217	00	30 SEP 2021
218	00	30 SEP 2021
219	00	30 SEP 2021
220	00	30 SEP 2021
221	00	30 SEP 2021
222	00	30 SEP 2021
223	00	30 SEP 2021
224	00	30 SEP 2021
225	00	30 SEP 2021
226	00	30 SEP 2021
227	00	30 SEP 2021
228	00	30 SEP 2021
229	00	30 SEP 2021
230	00	30 SEP 2021
231	00	30 SEP 2021
232	00	30 SEP 2021

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

INTRODUCTION AND APPLICABILITY

In this publication the word 'should' is used to indicate that the Organisation, Owner or Operator has a degree of latitude in adhering to the requirement, particularly where the nature of the operation - or proposed operation - affects their ability to achieve the necessary degree of compliance with the requirement; provided that an acceptable level of safety is achieved.

If the Organisation's/owner's/operator's response is deemed to be inadequate by the Director General, a specific requirement or restriction may be applied as a condition of the appropriate instrument to be issued under Thailand Civil Aviation Regulations. This publication includes associated means of compliance and interpretative material wherever possible and, unless specifically stated otherwise, clarification will be based on this material or other relevant the CAAT documentation.

These AMCs and GM are based on EASA Executive Director Decisions (ED) up to 2018/012/R, 2019/005/R, 2019/019/R, 2019/025/R, 2021/002/R, 2021/005/R, 2021/008/R, 2022/005/R, 2022/012/R, 2022/014/R and 2023/004/R.

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

TABLE OF CONTENT

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SUBPART A: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

GM1 NCC.GEN.100 The competent authority

DETERMINING THE PLACE WHERE AN OPERATOR IS RESIDING

For the purpose of TCAR OPS, the concept of 'place where the operator is residing' is mainly addressed to a natural person.

The place where the operator resides is the place where the operator complies with his or her tax obligations.

Several criteria can be used to help determining a person's place of residence. These include, for example:

(a) the duration of a person's presence on the territory of the countries concerned;

(b) the person's family status and ties;

(c) the person's housing situation and how permanent it is;

(d) the place where the person pursues professional or non-profit activities;

(e) the characteristics of the person's professional activity; and

(f) the State where the person resides for taxation purposes.

GM1 NCC.GEN.105(e)(2) Crew responsibilities

GENERAL

In accordance with the air operations requirements of the Air Navigation Act B.E 2497, TCAR OPS and other applicable Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulations a crew member must not perform duties on board an aircraft when under the influence of psychoactive substances or alcohol or when unfit due to injury, fatigue, medication, sickness or other similar causes. This should be understood as including the following:

(a) effects of deep water diving and blood donation, and allowing for a certain time period between these activities and returning to flying; and

(b) without prejudice to more restrictive national regulations, the consumption of alcohol while on duty or less than 8 hours prior to the commencement of duties, and commencing a flight duty period with a blood alcohol level in excess of 0.2 per thousand.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.105(g) Crew responsibilities

OCCURRENCE REPORTING

Whenever a crew member makes use of the applicable reporting systems, a copy of the report should be communicated to the pilot-in-command.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.106 Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

FLIGHT PREPARATION FOR PBN OPERATIONS

(a) The flight crew should ensure that RNAV 1, RNAV 2, RNP 1 RNP 2, and RNP APCH routes or procedures to be used for the intended flight, including for any alternate aerodromes, are selectable from the navigation database and are not prohibited by NOTAM.

(b) The flight crew should take account of any NOTAMs or operator briefing material that could adversely affect the aircraft system operation along its flight plan including any alternate aerodromes.

(c) When PBN relies on GNSS systems for which RAIM is required for integrity, its availability should be verified during the preflight planning. In the event of a predicted continuous loss of fault detection of more than five minutes, the flight planning should be revised to reflect the lack of full PBN capability for that period.

(d) For RNP 4 operations with only GNSS sensors, a fault detection and exclusion (FDE) check should be performed. The maximum allowable time for which FDE capability is projected to be unavailable on any one event is 25 minutes. If predictions indicate that the maximum allowable FDE outage will be exceeded, the operation should be rescheduled to a time when FDE is available.

(e) For RNAV 10 operations, the flight crew should take account of the RNAV 10 time limit declared for the inertial system, if applicable, considering also the effect of weather conditions that couldaffect flight duration in RNAV 10 airspace. Where an extension to the time limit is permitted, the flight crew will need to ensure that en route radio facilities are serviceable before departure, and to apply radio updates in accordance with any AFM limitation.

AMC2 NCC.GEN.106 Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

DATABASE SUITABILITY

(a) The flight crew should check that any navigational database required for PBN operations includes the routes and procedures required for the flight.

DATABASE CURRENCY

(b) The database validity (current AIRAC cycle) should be checked before the flight.

(c) Navigation databases should be current for the duration of the flight. If the AIRAC cycle is due to change during flight, the flight crew should follow procedures established by the operator to ensure the accuracy of navigation data, including the suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for the flight.

(d) An expired database may only be used if the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) the operator has confirmed that the parts of the database which are intended to be used during the flight and any contingencies that are reasonable to expect are not changed in the current version;

(2) any NOTAMs associated with the navigational data are taken into account;

(3) maps and charts corresponding to those parts of the flight are current and have not been amended since the last cycle;

(4) any MEL limitations are observed; and

(5) the database has expired by no more than 28 days.

GM1 NCC.GEN.106 Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

GENERAL

In accordance with the Air Navigation Act B.E 2497 and Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulations the pilot-in-command is responsible for the operation and safety of the aircraft and for the safety of all crew members, passengers and cargo on board. This would normally be from the time that he/she assumes responsibility for the aircraft and passengers prior to a flight until the passengers are deplaned and escorted out of the operational area of the aerodrome or operating site and he/she relinquishes responsibility for the aircraft at the end of a flight or series of flights. The pilot-in-command's responsibilities and authority should be understood as including at least the following:

(a) the safety of all crew members, passengers and cargo on board, as soon as he/she arrives on board, until he/she leaves the aircraft at the end of the flight; and

(b) the operation and safety of the aircraft:

  (1) for aeroplanes, from the moment it is first ready to move for the purpose of taxiing prior to take-off, until the moment it comes to rest at the end of the flight and the engine(s) used as primary propulsion unit(s) is/are shut down; or

  (2) for helicopters, from the moment the engine(s) are started until the helicopter comes to rest at the end of the flight with the engine(s) shut down and the rotor blades stopped.

GM1 NCC.GEN.106(a)(9) Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

IDENTIFICATION OF THE SEVERITY OF AN OCCURRENCE BY THE PILOT-IN-COMMAND

The definitions of an accident and a serious incident as well as examples thereof can be found in Section 61 of the Air Navigation Act B.E. 2497 and Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulations, including occurrence reporting Regulation(s).

GM1 NCC.GEN.106(b) Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

AUTHORITY TO REFUSE CARRIAGE OR DISEMBARK

This may include:

(a) passengers who have special needs that cannot be provided on the aircraft; or

(b) persons that appear to be under the influence of alcohol or drugs.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.106(c) Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

REPORTING OF HAZARDOUS FLIGHT CONDITIONS

(a) These reports should include any detail which may be pertinent to the safety of other aircraft.

(b) Such reports should be made whenever any of the following conditions are encountered or observed:

  (1) severe turbulence;

  (2) severe icing;

  (3) severe mountain wave;

  (4) thunderstorms, with or without hail, that are obscured, embedded, widespread or in squall lines;

  (5) heavy dust storm or heavy sandstorm;

  (6) volcanic ash cloud; and

  (7) unusual and/or increasing volcanic activity or a volcanic eruption.

(c) When other meteorological conditions not listed above, e.g. wind shear, are encountered that, in the opinion of the pilot-in-command, may affect the safety or the efficiency of other aircraft operations, the pilot-in-command should advise the appropriate air traffic services (ATS) unit as soon as practicable.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.106(d) Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

MITIGATING MEASURES — FATIGUE

The use of additional crew members and/or controlled rest during flight as described in GM1 NCC.GEN.106(d) may be considered as appropriate fatigue mitigating measures.

GM1 NCC.GEN.106(d) Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

MITIGATING MEASURES — FATIGUE — CONTROLLED REST IN THE FLIGHT CREW COMPARTMENT

(a) This Guidance Material (GM) addresses controlled rest taken by the minimum certified flight crew. It is not related to planned in-flight rest by members of an augmented crew.

(b) Although flight crew members should stay alert at all times during flight, unexpected fatigue can occur as a result of sleep disturbance and circadian disruption. To cater for this unexpected fatigue, and to regain a high level of alertness, a controlled rest procedure in the flight crew compartment, organised by the pilot-in-command, may be used, if workload permits. 'Controlled rest' means a period of time 'off task' that may include actual sleep. The use of controlled rest has been shown to significantly increase the levels of alertness during the later phases of flight, particularly after the top of descent, and is considered to be good use of crew resource management (CRM) principles. Controlled rest should be used in conjunction with other on board fatigue management countermeasures such as physical exercise, bright flight crew compartment illumination at appropriate times, balanced eating and drinking and intellectual activity.

(c) Controlled rest taken in this way should not be considered to be part of a rest period for the purposes of calculating flight time limitations, nor used to justify any duty period extension. Controlled rest may be used to manage both sudden unexpected fatigue and fatigue that is expected to become more severe during higher workload periods later in the flight. Controlled rest is not related to fatigue management, which is planned before flight.

(d) Controlled rest periods should be agreed according to individual needs and the accepted principles of CRM; where the involvement of the cabin crew is required, consideration should be given to their workload.

(e) When applying controlled rest procedures, the pilot-in-command should ensure that:

(1) the other flight crew member(s) is(are) adequately briefed to carry out the duties of the resting flight crew member;

(2) one flight crew member is fully able to exercise control of the aircraft at all times; and

(3) any system intervention that would normally require a cross-check according to multi-crew principles is avoided until the resting flight crew member resumes his/her duties.

(f) Controlled rest procedures should satisfy the following criteria:

(1) only one flight crew member at a time should take rest at his/her station; the harness should be used and the seat positioned to minimise unintentional interference with the controls;

(2) the rest period should be no longer than 45 minutes (in order to limit any actual sleep to approximately 30 minutes) so as to limit deep sleep and associated long recovery time (sleep inertia);

(3) after this 45-minute period, there should be a recovery period of 20 minutes during which sole control of the aircraft should not be entrusted to the flight crew member taking controlled rest;

(4) in the case of two-crew operations, means should be established to ensure that the non-resting flight crew member remains alert. This may include:

(i) appropriate alarm systems;

(ii) on board systems to monitor flight crew activity; and

(iii) where cabin crew are on board the aircraft, frequent cabin crew checks. In this case, the pilot-in-command should inform the cabin crew member of the intention of the flight crew member to take controlled rest, and of the time of the end of that rest; frequent contact should be established between the non-resting flight crew member and the cabin crew by communication means, and the cabin crew should check that the resting flight crew member is alert at the end of the period;

(5) there should be a minimum of 20 minutes between two sequential controlled rest periods in order to overcome the effects of sleep inertia and allow for adequate briefing;

(6) if necessary, a flight crew member may take more than one rest period, if time permits, on longer sectors, subject to the restrictions above; and

(7) controlled rest periods should terminate at least 30 minutes before the top of descent.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.106 (e) Pilot-in-command responsibilities and authority

VIOLATION REPORTING

If required by the State in which the incident occurs, the pilot-in-command should submit a report on any such violation to the appropriate authority of such State; in that event, the pilot-in-command should also submit a copy of it to the CAAT. Such reports should be submitted as soon as possible and normally within 10 days.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.119 Taxiing of aircraft

PROCEDURES FOR TAXIING

Procedures for taxiing should include at least the following:

(a) application of the sterile flight crew compartment procedures;

(b) use of standard radio-telephony (RTF) phraseology;

(c) use of lights;

(d) measures to enhance the situational awareness of the minimum required flight crew members. The following list of typical items should be adapted by the operator to take into account its operational environment:

(1) each flight crew member should have the necessary aerodrome layout charts available;

(2) the pilot taxiing the aircraft should announce in advance his/her intentions to the pilot monitoring;

(3) all taxi clearances should be heard, and should be understood by each flight crew member;

(4) all taxi clearances should be cross-checked against the aerodrome chart and aerodrome surface markings, signs, and lights;

(5) an aircraft taxiing on the manoeuvring area should stop and hold at all lighted stop bars, and may proceed further when an explicit clearance to enter or cross the runway has been issued by the aerodrome control tower, and when the stop bar lights are switched off;

(6) if the pilot taxiing the aircraft is unsure of his/her position, he/she should stop the aircraft and contact air traffic control;

(7) the pilot monitoring should monitor the taxi progress and adherence to the clearances, and should assist the pilot taxiing;

(8) any action which may disturb the flight crew from the taxi activity should be avoided or done with the parking brake set (e.g. announcements by public address);

(e) subparagraphs (d)(2) and (d)(7) are not applicable to single-pilot operations.

GM1 NCC.GEN.120 Taxiing of aeroplanes

SAFETY-CRITICAL ACTIVITY

(a) Taxiing should be treated as a safety-critical activity due to the risks related to the movement of the aeroplane and the potential for a catastrophic event on the ground.

(b) Taxiing is a high-workload phase of flight that requires the full attention of the flight crew.

GM1 NCC.GEN.120(b)(4) Taxiing of aeroplanes

SKILLS AND KNOWLEDGE

The person designated by the operator to taxi an aeroplane should possess the following skills and knowledge:

(a) Positioning of the aeroplane to ensure safety when starting engine;

(b) Getting ATIS reports and taxi clearance, where applicable;

(c) Interpretation of airfield markings/lights/signals/indicators;

(d) Interpretation of marshalling signals, where applicable;

(e) Identification of suitable parking area;

(f) Maintaining lookout and right-of-way rules and complying with ATC or marshalling instructions when applicable;

(g) Avoidance of adverse effect of propeller slipstream or jet wash on other aeroplanes, aerodrome facilities and personnel;

(h) Inspection of taxi path when surface conditions are obscured;

(i) Communication with others when controlling an aeroplane on the ground;

(j) Interpretation of operational instructions;

(k) Reporting of any problem that may occur while taxiing an aeroplane; and

(l) Adapting the taxi speed in accordance with prevailing aerodrome, traffic, surface and weather conditions.

GM1 NCC.GEN.125 Rotor engagement

INTENT OF THE RULE

(a) The following two situations where it is allowed to turn the rotor under power should be distinguished:

(1) for the purpose of flight, as described in the Implementing Rule;

(2) for maintenance purposes.

(b) Rotor engagement for the purpose of flight: it should be noted that the pilot should not leave the control when the rotors are turning. For example, the pilot is not allowed to get out of the aircraft in order to welcome passengers and adjust their seat belts with the rotors turning.

(c) Rotor engagement for the purpose of maintenance: the Implementing Rule, however, should not prevent ground runs being conducted by qualified personnel other than pilots for maintenance purposes.

(i) The following conditions should be applied:

(ii) The operator should ensure that the qualification of personnel, other than pilots, who are authorised to conduct maintenance runs, is described in the appropriate manual.

(iii) Ground runs should not include taxiing the helicopter.

(iv) There should be no passengers on board.

(v) Maintenance runs should not include collective increase or autopilot engagement (risk of ground resonance).

AMC1 NCC.GEN.130 Portable electronic devices

TECHNICAL PREREQUISITES FOR THE USE OF PEDS

(a) Scope

This AMC describes the technical prerequisites under which any kind of portable electronic device (PED) may be used on board the aircraft without adversely affecting the performance of the aircraft's systems and equipment.

(b) Prerequisites concerning the aircraft configuration

(1) Before an operator may permit the use of any kind of PED on-board, it should ensure that PEDs have no impact on the safe operation of the aircraft. The operator should demonstrate that PEDs do not interfere with on-board electronic systems and equipment, especially with the aircraft's navigation and communication systems.

(2) The assessment of PED tolerance may be tailored to the different aircraft zones for which the use of PEDs is considered, i.e. may address separately:

(i) the passenger compartment;

(ii) the flight crew compartment; and

(iii) areas not accessible during the flight.

(c) Scenarios for permitting the use of PEDs

(1) Possible scenarios, under which the operator may permit the use of PEDs, should be as documented in Table 1. The scenarios in Table 1 are listed in a descending order with the least permitting scenario at the bottom.

(2) Restrictions arising from the corresponding aircraft certification, as documented in the aircraft flight manual (AFM) or equivalent document(s), should stay in force. They may be linked to different aircraft zones, or to particular transmitting technologies covered.

(3) For Scenarios Nos. 3 to 8 in Table 1 the use of C-PEDs and cargo tracking devices may be further expanded, when the EMI assessment has demonstrated that there is no impact on safety as follows:

(i) for C-PEDs by using the method described in (d)(2); and

(ii) for cargo tracking devices by using the method described in (d)(3).

Table 1 – Scenarios for permitting the use of PEDs by the operator

No.	Technical condition	Non-intentional transmitters	T-PEDs
1	The aircraft is certified as T-PED tolerant, i.e. it has been demonstrated during the aircraft certification process that front door and back door coupling have no impact on the safe operation of the aircraft	All phases of flight	All phases of flight
2	A complete electromagnetic interference (EMI) assessment for all technologies, using the method described in (d)(1), has been performed and has demonstrated the T-PED tolerance	All phases of flight	All phases of flight
3	The aircraft is certified for the use of T-PEDs using particular technologies (e.g. WLAN or mobile phone)	All phases of flight	All phases of flight, restricted to those particular technologies
4	The EMI assessment, using the method described in (d)(1), has demonstrated that: the front door coupling has no impact on safety; and the back door coupling has no impact on safety when using particular technologies (e.g. WLAN or mobile phone)	All phases of flight	All phases of flight, restricted to those particular technologies
5	The EMI assessment, using the method described in (d)(1)(i), has demonstrated that the front door coupling has no impact on safety caused by non-intentional transmitters	All phases of flight	Not permitted
6	The EMI assessment, using the method described in (d)(1)(ii), has demonstrated that the back door coupling has no impact on safety when using particular technologies (e.g. WLAN or mobile phone)	All phases of flight - except low visibility approach operation	All phases of flight - except low visibility approach operation, restricted to those particular technologies

No.	Technical condition	Non-intentional transmitters	T-PEDs
7	An EMI assessment has not been performed	All phases of flight - except low visibility approach operation	Not permitted
8	Notwithstanding Scenarios Nos. 3 to 7	(a) before taxi-out; (b) during taxi-in after the end of landing roll; and (c) the pilot-in-command may permit the use during prolonged departure delays, provided that sufficient time is available to check the passenger compartment before the flight proceeds	

(d) Demonstration of electromagnetic compatibility

(1) EMI assessment at aircraft level

The means to demonstrate that the radio frequency (RF) emissions (intentional or non- intentional) are tolerated by aircraft systems should be as follows:

(i) to address front door coupling susceptibility for any kind of PEDs:

(A) EUROCAE, 'Guidance for the use of Portable Electronic Devices (PEDs) on Board Aircraft', ED-130A / RTCA DO-363 'Guidance for the Development of Portable Electronic Devices (PED) Tolerance for Civil Aircraft', Section 5; or

(B) EUROCAE, 'Aircraft Design and Certification for Portable Electronic Device (PED) Tolerance', ED-239 / RTCA DO-307A, Section 4.

The use of RTCA, 'Guidance on Allowing Transmitting Portable, Electronic Devices (T-PEDs) on Aircraft', DO-294C (or later revisions), Appendix 5C; or RTCA, 'Aircraft Design and Certification for Portable Electronic Device (PED) Tolerance', DO-307 (including Change 1 or later revisions), Section 4, may be

(ii) To address back door coupling susceptibility for T-PEDs:

(A) EUROCAE, 'Guidance for the use of portable electronic devices (PEDs) on board aircraft', ED-130A/RTCA DO-363, Section 6; or

(B) EUROCAE, 'Aircraft Design and Certification for Portable Electronic Device (PED) Tolerance', ED-239 / RTCA DO-307A, Section 3.

The use of EUROCAE, 'Guidance for the use of Portable Electronic Devices (PEDs) on Board Aircraft', ED-130, Annex 6; or RTCA DO-294C (or later revisions), Appendix 6D; or RTCA DO-307 (including Change 1 or later revisions), Section 3, may be acceptable.Alternative EMI assessment of C-PEDs

(2) Alternative EMI assessment of C-PEDs

(i) For front door coupling:

(A) C-PEDs should comply with the levels as defined by:

(a) EUROCAE/RTCA, 'Environmental conditions and test procedures for airborne equipment', ED-14D/DO-160D (or later revisions), Section 21, Category M, for operation in the passenger compartment and the flight crew compartment; and

(b) EUROCAE ED-14D/RTCA DO-160D (or later revisions), Section 21, Category H, for operation in areas not accessible during the flight.

(B) If the C-PEDs are electronic flight bags used in the flight crew compartment and if the DO-160 testing described in (A) identifies inadequate margins for interference or has not been performed, it is necessary to test the C-PED in each aircraft model in which it will be operated. The C-PED should be tested in operation on the aircraft to show that no interference occurs with the aircraft equipment. This testing should be performed in a real aircraft, and credit may be given to other similarly equipped aircraft (meaning in particular that they have the same avionics equipment) of the same make and model as the one tested.

(ii) To address back-door coupling susceptibility for C-PEDs with transmitting capabilities, the EMI assessment described in (1)(ii) should be performed.

(3) Alternative EMI assessment of cargo tracking devices

In case a transmitting function is automatically deactivated in a cargo tracking device (being a T-PED), the unit should be qualified for safe operation on board the aircraft. One of the following methods should be considered acceptable as evidence for safe operation:

(i) A type-specific safety assessment, including failure mode and effects analysis, has been performed at aircraft level. The main purpose of the assessment should be to determine the worst hazards and to demonstrate an adequate design assurance level of the relevant hardware and software components of the cargo tracking device.

(ii) The high intensity radiated field (HIRF) certification of the aircraft has been performed, i.e. the aircraft type has been certified after 1987 and meets the appropriate special condition. In such a case, the operator should observe the following:

(A) The tracking device:

(a) features an automated and prolonged radio suspension in flight using multiple modes of redundancy; and

(b) has been verified in the aircraft environment to ensure deactivation of the transmitting function in flight.

(B) The transmissions of the tracking device are limited per design to short periods of time (less than 1 second per 1 000 seconds) and cannot be continuous.

(C) The tracking devices should comply with the levels as defined by EUROCAE ED-14E/RTCA DO-160E (or later revisions), Section 21, Category H.

(D) In order to provide assurance on the tracking device design and production, the following documents are retained as part of the evaluation package:

(a) operational description, technical specifications, product label and images of the tracking device and any peripheral attachments;

(b) failure mode and effects analysis report of the tracking device and any peripheral attachments;

(c) declaration of stringent design and production controls in place during the tracking device manufacturing;

(d) declaration of conformity and technical documentation showing compliance to the European Norms (EN), regulating the transmitter characteristic of the tracking device or its transmission module; and

(e) an EMI assessment report documenting the emission levels.

(iii) The tracking device interference levels during transmission are below those considered acceptable for the specific aircraft environment.

(e) Operational conditions of C-PEDS and cargo tracking devices

The operator should ensure that C-PEDs and cargo tracking devices are maintained in good and safe condition, having in mind that:

(1) damage may modify their emissions characteristics; and

(2) damage to the battery may create a fire hazard.

(f) Batteries in C-PEDs and cargo tracking devices

Lithium-type batteries in C-PEDs and cargo tracking devices should meet:

(1) United Nations (UN) Transportation Regulations, 'Recommendations on the transport of dangerous goods - manual of tests and criteria', UN ST/SG/AC.10/11; and

(2) one of the following standards:

(i) Underwriters Laboratory, 'Lithium batteries', UL 1642;

(ii) Underwriters Laboratory, 'Household and commercial batteries', UL 2054;

(iii) Underwriters Laboratory, 'Information technology equipment – safety', UL 60950-1;

(iv) International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), 'Secondary cells and batteries containing alkaline or other non-acid electrolytes - safety requirements for portable sealed secondary cells, and for batteries made from them, for use in portable applications', IEC 62133;

(v) RTCA, 'Minimum operational performance standards for rechargeable lithium battery systems', DO-311. RTCA DO-311 may be used to address concerns regarding overcharging, over-discharging, and the flammability of cell components. The standard is intended to test permanently installed equipment; however, these tests are applicable and sufficient to test electronic flight bags rechargeable lithium-type batteries; or

(vi) European Technical Standard Order (ETSO), 'Non-rechargeable lithium cells and batteries', ETSO C142a.

AMC2 NCC.GEN.130 Portable electronic devices

PROCEDURES FOR THE USE OF PEDS

(a) Scope

This AMC describes the procedures under which any kind of portable electronic device (PED) may be used on board the aircraft without adversely affecting the performance of the aircraft's systems and equipment. This AMC addresses the operation of PEDs in the different aircraft zones - passenger compartment, flight compartment, and areas inaccessible during the flight.

(b) Prerequisites

Before permitting the use of any kind of PEDs the operator should ensure compliance with (c) of AMC1 NCC.GEN.130.

(c) Hazard identification and risk assessment

The operator should identify the safety hazards and manage the associated risks following the management system implemented in accordance with ORO.GEN.200. The risk assessment should include hazards associated with:

(1) PEDs in different aircraft zones;

(2) PED use during various phases of flight;

(3) PED use during turbulence;

(4) improperly stowed PEDs;

(5) impeded or slowed evacuations;

(6) passenger non-compliance, e.g. not deactivating transmitting functions, not switching off PEDs or not stowing PEDs properly;

(7) disruptive passengers; and

(8) battery fire.

(d) Use of PEDs in the passenger compartment

(1) Procedures and training

If an operator permits passengers to use PEDs on board its aircraft, procedures should be in place to control their use. These procedures should include provisions for passenger briefing, passenger handling and for the stowage of PEDs. The operator should ensure that all crew members and ground personnel are trained to enforce possible restrictions concerning the use of PEDs, in line with these procedures.

(2) Provisions for use

(i) The use of PEDs in the passenger compartment may be granted under the responsibility of the operator, i.e. the operator decides which PED may be used during which phases of the flight.

(ii) Notwithstanding (b), medical equipment necessary to support physiological functions may be used at all times and does not need to be switched-off.

(3) Stowage, passenger information and passenger briefing of PEDs

(i) In accordance with NCC.OP.135 the operator should establish procedures concerning the stowage of PEDs. The operator should:

(A) identify the phases of flight in which PEDs are to be stowed; and

(B) determine suitable stowage locations, taking into account the PEDs' size and weight.

(ii) The operator should provide general information on the use of PEDs to the passengers before the flight. This information should specify at least:

(A) which PEDs can be used during which phases of the flight;

(B) when and where PEDs are to be stowed; and

(C) that the instructions of the crew are to be followed at all times.

(iii) The use of PEDs should be part of the passenger briefings. The operator should remind passengers to pay attention and to avoid distraction during such briefings.

(4) In-seat electrical power supplies

Where in-seat electrical power supplies are available for passenger use, the following should apply:

(i) information giving safety instructions should be provided to the passengers;

(ii) PEDs should be disconnected from any in-seat electrical power supply during taxiing, take-off, approach, landing, and during abnormal or emergency conditions; and

(iii) flight crew and cabin crew should be aware of the proper means to switch-off in-seat power supplies used for PEDs.

(5) Operator's safety measures during boarding and any phase of flight

(i) Appropriate coordination between flight crew and cabin crew should be established to deal with interference or other safety problems associated with PEDs.

(ii) Suspect equipment should be switched off.

(iii) Particular attention should be given to passenger misuse of equipment.

(iv) Thermal runaways of batteries, in particular lithium batteries, and potential resulting fire, should be handled properly.

(v) The pilot-in-command may, for any reason and during any phase of flight, require deactivation and stowage of PEDs.

(vi) When the operator restricts the use of PEDs, consideration should be given to handle special requests to operate a T-PED during any phase of the flight for specific reasons (e.g. for security measures).

(6) Reporting

Occurrences of suspected or confirmed interference should be reported to the CAAT. Where possible, to assist follow-up and technical investigation, reports should describe the suspected device, identify the brand name and model number, its location in the aircraft at the time of the occurrence, interference symptoms, the device user's contact details and the results of actions taken by the crew.

(e) Use of PEDs in the flight crew compartment

In the flight crew compartment the operator may permit the use of PEDs, e.g. to assist the flight crew in their duties, when procedures are in place to ensure the following:

(1) The conditions for the use of PEDs in-flight are specified in the operations manual.

(2) The PEDs do not pose a loose item risk or other hazard.

(3) These provisions should not preclude use of a T-PED (specifically a mobile phone) by the flight crew to deal with an emergency. However, reliance should not be predicated on a T-PED for this purpose.

(f) PEDs not accessible during the flight

PEDs should be switched off, when not accessible for deactivation during flight. This should apply especially to PEDs contained in baggage or transported as part of the cargo. The operator may permit deviation for PEDs for which safe operation has been demonstrated in accordance with AMC1 NCC.GEN.130. Other precautions, such as transporting in shielded metal boxes, may also be used to mitigate associated risks.

GM1 NCC.GEN.130 Portable electronic devices

DEFINITIONS

(a) Definition and categories of PEDs

PEDs are any kind of electronic device, typically but not limited to consumer electronics, brought on board the aircraft by crew members, passengers, or as part of the cargo and that are not included in the approved aircraft configuration. All equipment that is able to consume electrical energy falls under this definition. The electrical energy can be provided from internal sources as batteries (chargeable or non-rechargeable) or the devices may also be connected to specific aircraft power sources.

PEDs include the following two categories:

(1) Non-intentional transmitters can non-intentionally radiate RF transmissions, sometimes referred to as spurious emissions. This category includes, but is not limited to, calculators, cameras, radio receivers, audio and video players, electronic games and toys; when these devices are not equipped with a transmitting function.

(2) Intentional transmitters radiate RF transmissions on specific frequencies as part of their intended function. In addition, they may radiate non-intentional transmissions like any PED. The term ‘transmitting PED’ (T-PED) is used to identify the transmitting capability of the PED. Intentional transmitters are transmitting devices such as RF-based remote control equipment, which may include some toys, two-way radios (sometimes referred to as private mobile radio), mobile phones of any type, satellite phones, computers with mobile phone data connection, wireless local area network (WLAN) or Bluetooth capability. After deactivation of the transmitting capability, e.g. by activating the so-called ‘flight mode’ or ‘flight safety mode’, the T-PED remains a PED having non-intentional emissions.

(b) Controlled PEDs (C-PEDs)

A controlled PED (C-PED) is a PED subject to administrative control by the operator using it. This will include, inter alia, tracking the allocation of the devices to specific aircraft or persons and ensuring that no unauthorised changes are made to the hardware, software or databases. C-PEDs can be assigned to the category of non-intentional transmitters or T-PEDs.

(c) Cargo tracking device

A cargo tracking device is a PED attached to or included in airfreight (e.g. in or on containers, pallets, parcels or baggage). Cargo tracking devices can be assigned to the category of non-intentional transmitters or T-PEDs. If the device is a T-PED, it complies with the European Norms (EN) for transmissions.

(d) Definition of the switched-off status

Many PEDs are not completely disconnected from the internal power source when switched off. The switching function may leave some remaining functionality, e.g. data storage, timer, clock, etc. These devices can be considered switched off when in the deactivated status. The same applies for devices having no transmitting capability and are operated by coin cells without further deactivation capability, e.g. wrist watches.

(e) Electromagnetic interference (EMI)

The two classes of EMI to be addressed can be described as follows:

(1) Front door coupling is the possible disturbance to an aircraft system as received by the antenna of the system and mainly in the frequency band used by the system. Any PED internal oscillation has the potential to radiate low level signals in the aviation frequency bands. Through this disturbance especially the instrument landing system (ILS) and the VHF omni range (VOR) navigation system may indicate erroneous information.

(2) Back door coupling is the possible disturbance of aircraft systems by electromagnetic fields generated by transmitters at a level which could exceed on short distance (i.e. within the aircraft) the electromagnetic field level used for the aircraft system certification. This disturbance may then lead to system malfunction.

GM2 NCC.GEN.130 Portable electronic devices

CREW REST COMPARTMENT, NAVIGATION, TEST ENTITIES AND FIRE CAUSED BY PEDS

(a) When the aircraft is equipped with a crew rest compartment, it is considered being part of the passenger compartment.

(b) Front door coupling may influence the VOR navigation system. Therefore, the flight crew monitors other navigation sensors to detect potential disturbances by PEDs, especially during low visibility departure operation based on VOR guidance.

(c) Specific equipment, knowledge and experience are required, when the industry standards for evaluating technical prerequisites for the use of PEDs are applied. In order to ensure conformity with the industry standards, the operator is encouraged to cooperate with an appropriately qualified and experienced entity, as necessary. For this entity an aviation background is not required, but is considered to be beneficial.

(d) Guidance to follow in case of fire caused by PEDs is provided by the International Civil Aviation Organisation, 'Emergency response guidance for aircraft incidents involving dangerous goods', ICAO Doc 9481-AN/928.

GM3 NCC.GEN.130 Portable electronic devices

CARGO TRACKING DEVICES EVALUATION

(a) Safety assessment

Further guidance on performing a safety assessment can be found in:

(1) EASA, 'Certification specifications and acceptable means of compliance for large aeroplanes', CS-25, Book 2, AMC-Subpart F, AMC 25.1309;

(2) EUROCAE/SAE, 'Guidelines for development of civil aircraft and systems', ED-79/ARP 4754 (or later revisions); and

(3) SAE, 'Guidelines and methods for conducting the safety assessment process on civil airborne systems and equipment', ARP 4761 (or later revisions).

(b) HIRF certification

The type certificate data sheet (TCDS), for each aircraft model, lists whether the HIRF certification has been performed through a special condition. The operator may contact the type certification holder to gain the necessary information.

(c) Failure mode and effects analysis

Further guidance on performing a failure mode and effects analysis can be found in:

(1) SAE ARP 4761 (or later revisions); and

(2) U.S. Department of Defense, 'Procedures for performing a failure mode, effects and criticality analysis', Military Standard MIL-STD-1629A (or later revisions).

AMC1 NCC.GEN.131(a) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

HARDWARE

In addition to AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.141(a), the following should be considered:

(a) Display characteristics

Consideration should be given to the long-term degradation of a display, as a result of abrasion and ageing. AMC 25-11 (paragraph 3.16a) may be used as guidance to assess luminance and legibility aspects.

Information displayed on the EFB should be legible to the typical user at the intended viewing distance(s) and under the full range of lighting conditions expected in a flight crew compartment, including direct sunlight.

Users should be able to adjust the brightness of an EFB screen independently of the brightness of other displays in the flight crew compartment. In addition, when incorporating an automatic brightness adjustment, it should operate independently for each EFB in the flight crew compartment. Brightness adjustment using software means may be acceptable provided that this operation does not adversely affect the flight crew workload.

Buttons and labels should have adequate illumination for night use. 'Buttons and labels' refers to hardware controls located on the display itself.

All controls should be properly labelled for their intended function, except if no confusion is possible.

The 90-degree viewing angle on either side of each flight crew member's line of sight may be unacceptable for certain EFB applications if aspects of the display quality are degraded at large viewing angles (e.g. the display colours wash out or the displayed colour contrast is not discernible at the installation viewing angle).

(b) Power source

The design of a portable EFB system should consider the source of electrical power, the independence of the power sources for multiple EFBs, and the potential need for an independent battery source. A non-exhaustive list of factors to be considered includes:

(1) the possibility to adopt operational procedures to ensure an adequate level of safety (for example, ensure a minimum level of charge before departure);

(2) the possible redundancy of portable EFBs to reduce the risk of exhausted batteries;

(3) the availability of backup battery packs to ensure an alternative source of power.

Battery-powered EFBs that have aircraft power available for recharging the internal EFB batteries are considered to have a suitable backup power source.

For EFBs that have an internal battery power source, and that are used as an alternative for paper documentation that is required by NCC.GEN.140, the operator should either have at least one EFB connected to an aircraft power bus or have established mitigation means and procedures to ensure that sufficient power with acceptable margins will be available during the whole flight.

(c) Environmental testing

Environmental testing, in particular testing for rapid decompression, should be performed when the EFB hosts applications that are required to be used during flight following a rapid decompression and/or when the EFB environmental operational range is potentially insufficient with respect to the foreseeable flight crew compartment operating conditions.

The information from the rapid-decompression test of an EFB is used to establish the procedural requirements for the use of that EFB device in a pressurised aircraft. Rapid-decompression testing should follow the EUROCAE ED-14D/RTCA DO-160D (or later revisions) guidelines for rapiddecompression testing up to the maximum operating altitude of the aircraft at which the EFB is to be used.

(1) Pressurised aircraft: when a portable EFB has successfully completed rapid-decompression testing, then no mitigating procedures for depressurisation events need to be developed. When a portable EFB has failed the rapid-decompression testing while turned ON, but successfully completed it when turned OFF, then procedures should ensure that at least one EFB on board the aircraft remains OFF during the applicable flight phases or that it is configured so that no damage will be incurred should rapid decompression occur in flight at an altitude higher than 10 000 ft above mean sea level (AMSL).

If an EFB system has not been tested or it has failed the rapid-decompression test, then alternate procedures or paper backup should be available.

(2) Non-pressurised aircraft: rapid-decompression testing is not required for an EFB used in a non pressurised aircraft. The EFB should be demonstrated to reliably operate up to the maximum operating altitude of the aircraft. If the EFB cannot be operated at the maximum operating altitude of the aircraft, procedures should be established to preclude operation of the EFB above the maximum demonstrated EFB operating altitude while still maintaining the availability of any required aeronautical information displayed on the EFB.

The results of testing performed on a specific EFB model configuration (as identified by the EFB hardware manufacturer) may be applied to other aircraft installations and these generic environmental tests may not need to be duplicated. The operator should collect and retain:

(1) evidence of these tests that have already been accomplished; or

(2) suitable alternative procedures to deal with the total loss of the EFB system.

Rapid decompression tests do not need to be repeated when the EFB model identification and the battery type do not change.

The testing of operational EFBs should be avoided if possible to preclude the infliction of unknown damage to the unit during testing.

Operators should account for the possible loss or erroneous functioning of the EFB in abnormal environmental conditions.

The safe stowage and the use of the EFB under any foreseeable environmental conditions in the flight crew compartment, including turbulence, should be evaluated.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.131(b) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

SOFTWARE

The same considerations as those in AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.141(b), AMC2 CAT.GEN.MPA.141(b) and AMC3 CAT.GEN.MPA.141(b) should apply in respect of EFB software.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.131(b)(1) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

RISK ASSESSMENT

(a) General

Prior to the use of any EFB system, the operator should perform a risk assessment for all type B EFB applications and for the related hardware as part of its hazard identification and risk management process.

The operator may make use of a risk assessment established by the software developer. However, the operator should ensure that its specific operational environment is taken into account.

The risk assessment should:

(1) evaluate the risks associated with the use of an EFB;

(2) dentify potential losses of function or malfunction (with detected and undetected erroneous outputs) and the associated failure scenarios;

(3) analyse the operational consequences of these failure scenarios;

(4) establish mitigating measures; and

(5) ensure that the EFB system (hardware and software) achieves at least the same level of accessibility, usability, and reliability as the means of presentation it replaces.

In considering the accessibility, usability, and reliability of the EFB system, the operator should ensure that the failure of the complete EFB system as well as of individual applications, including corruption or loss of data, and erroneously displayed information, has been assessed and that the risks have been mitigated to an acceptable level.

The operator should ensure that the risk assessments for type B EFB applications are maintained and kept up to date.

When the EFB system is intended to be introduced alongside a paper-based system, only the failures that would not be mitigated by the use of the paper-based system need to be addressed. In all other cases, a complete risk assessment should be performed.

(b) Assessing and mitigating the risks

Some parameters of EFB applications may depend on entries that are made by flight crew/dispatchers, whereas others may be default parameters from within the system that are subject to an administration process (e.g. the runway line-up allowance in an aircraft performance application). In the first case, mitigation means would mainly concern training and flight crew procedure aspects, whereas in the second case, mitigation means would more likely focus on the EFB administration and data management aspects.

The analysis should be specific to the operator concerned and should address at least the following points:

(1) The minimisation of undetected erroneous outputs from applications and assessment of the worst credible scenario;

(2) Erroneous outputs from the software application including:

(i) a description of the corruption scenarios that were analysed; and

(ii) a description of the mitigation means;

(3) Upstream processes including:

(i) the reliability of root data used in applications (e.g. qualified input data, such as databases produced under ED-76/DO-200A, ‘Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data’);

(ii) the software application validation and verification checks according to appropriate industry standards, if applicable; and

(iii) the independence between application software components, e.g. robust partitioning between EFB applications and other airworthiness certified software applications;

(4) A description of the mitigation means to be used following the detected failure of an application, or of a detected erroneous output;

(5) The need for access to an alternate power supply in order to ensure the availability of software applications, especially if they are used as a source of required information.

As part of the mitigation means, the operator should consider establishing a reliable alternative means to provide the information available on the EFB system.

The mitigation means could be, for example, one of, or a combination of, the following:

(1) the system design (including hardware and software);

(2) a backup EFB device, possibly supplied from a different power source;

(3) EFB applications being hosted on more than one platform;

(4) a paper backup (e.g. quick reference handbook (QRH)); and

(5) procedural means.

Depending on the outcome of their risk assessment, the operator may also consider performing an operational evaluation test before allowing unrestricted use of its EFB devices and applications.

EFB system design features such as those assuring data integrity and the accuracy of performance calculations (e.g. ‘reasonableness’ or ‘range’ checks) may be integrated in the risk assessment performed by the operator.

(c) Changes

The operator should update its EFB risk assessment based on the planned changes to its EFB system.

However, modifications to the operator’s EFB system which:

(1) do not bring any change to the calculation algorithms and/or to the interface of a type B EFB application;

(2) introduce a new type A EFB application or modify an existing one (provided its software classification remains type A);

(3) do not introduce any additional functionality to an existing type B EFB application;

(4) update an existing database necessary to use an existing type B EFB application; or

(5) do not require a change to the flight crew training or operational procedures, may be introduced by the operator without having to update its risk assessment.

These changes should, nevertheless, be controlled and properly tested prior to use in flight.

The modifications in the following non-exhaustive list are considered to meet these criteria:

(1) operating system updates;

(2) chart or airport database updates;

(3) updates to introduce fixes (patches); and

(4) installation and modification of a type A EFB application.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

EFB ADMINISTRATION

The operator should ensure:

(a) that adequate support is provided to the EFB users for all the applications installed;

(b) that potential security issues associated with the application installed have been checked;

(c) that the hardware and software configuration is appropriately managed and that no unauthorised software is installed.

The operator should ensure that miscellaneous software applications do not adversely impact on the operation of the EFB, and should include miscellaneous software applications in the scope of the EFB configuration management;

(d) that only a valid version of the application software and current data packages are installed on the EFB system; and

(e) the integrity of the data packages used by the applications installed.

AMC2 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

PROCEDURES

The procedures for the administration or the use of the EFB device and the type B EFB application may be fully or partly integrated in the operations manual.

(a) General

If an EFB system generates information similar to that generated by existing certified systems, procedures should clearly identify which information source will be the primary, which source will be used for backup information, and under which conditions the backup source should be used. Procedures should define the actions to be taken by the flight crew members when information provided by an EFB system is not consistent with that from other flight crew compartment sources, or when one EFB system shows different information than the other.

In the case of EFB applications providing information which might be affected by Notice(s) to Airmen NOTAMS (e.g. Airport moving map display (AMMD), performance calculation,) the procedure for the use of these applications should include the handling of the relevant NOTAMS before their use.

(b) Flight crew awareness of EFB software/database revisions

The operator should have a process in place to verify that the configuration of the EFB, including software application versions and, where applicable, database versions, are up to date. Flight crew members should have the ability to easily verify the validity of database versions used on the EFB. Nevertheless, flight crew members should not be required to confirm the revision dates for other databases that do not adversely affect flight operations, such as maintenance log forms or a list of airport codes. An example of a date-sensitive revision is that applied to an aeronautical chart database. Procedures should specify what actions should be taken if the software applications or databases loaded on the EFB system are outdated.

(c) Workload mitigation and/or control

The operator should ensure that additional workload created by using an EFB system is adequately mitigated and/or controlled. The operator should ensure that, while the aircraft is in flight or moving on the ground, flight crew members do not become preoccupied with the EFB system at the same time. Workload should be shared between flight crew members to ensure ease of use and continued monitoring of other flight crew functions and aircraft equipment. This should be strictly applied in flight and the operator should specify any times when the flight crew members may not use the specific EFB application.

(d) Dispatch

The operator should establish dispatch criteria for the EFB system. The operator should ensure that the availability of the EFB system is confirmed by preflight checks. Instructions to flight crew should clearly define the actions to be taken in the event of any EFB system deficiency. Mitigation may be in the form of maintenance and/or operational procedures for items such as:

(1) replacement of batteries at defined intervals as required;

(2) ensuring that there is a fully charged backup battery on board;

(3) the flight crew checking the battery charging level before departure; and

(4) the flight crew switching off the EFB in a timely manner when the aircraft power source is lost.

In the event of a partial or complete failure of the EFB, specific dispatch procedures should be followed. These procedures should be included either in the minimum equipment list (MEL) or in the operations manual and should ensure an acceptable level of safety.

Particular attention should be paid to establishing specific dispatch procedures allowing to obtain operational data (e.g. performance data) in the event of a failure of an EFB hosting application that provides such calculated data.

When the integrity of data input and output is verified by cross-checking and gross-error checks, the same checking principle should be applied to alternative dispatch procedures to ensure equivalent protection.

(e) Maintenance

Procedures should be established for the routine maintenance of the EFB system and detailing how unserviceability and failures are to be dealt with to ensure that the integrity of the EFB system is preserved. Maintenance procedures should also include the secure handling of updated information and how this information is validated and then promulgated in a timely manner and in a complete format to all users.

As part of the EFB system's maintenance, the operator should ensure that the EFB system batteries are periodically checked and replaced as required.

Should a fault or failure of the system arise, it is essential that such failures are brought to the immediate attention of the flight crew and that the system is isolated until rectification action is taken. In addition to backup procedures, to deal with system failures, a reporting system should be in place so that the necessary action, either to a particular EFB system or to the whole system, is taken in order to prevent the use of erroneous information by flight crew members.

(f) Security

The EFB system (including any means used for updating it) should be secure from unauthorised intervention (e.g. by malicious software). The operator should ensure that the system is adequately protected at the software level and that the hardware is appropriately managed (e.g. the identification of the person to whom the hardware is released, protected storage when the hardware is not in use) throughout the operational lifetime of the EFB system. The operator should ensure that prior to each flight the EFB operational software works as specified and the EFB operational data is complete and accurate. Moreover, a system should be in place to ensure that the EFB does not accept a data load that contains corrupted contents. Adequate measures should be in place for the compilation and secure distribution of data to the aircraft.

Procedures should be transparent, and easy to understand, to follow and to oversee:

(1) If an EFB is based on consumer electronics (e.g. a laptop) which can be easily removed, manipulated, or replaced by a similar component, then special consideration should be given to the physical security of the hardware;

(2) Portable EFB platforms should be subject to allocation tracking to specific aircraft or persons;

(3) Where a system has input ports, and especially if widely known protocols are used through these ports or internet connections are offered, then special consideration should be given to the risks associated with these ports;

(4) Where physical media are used to update the EFB system, and especially if widely known types of physical media are used, then the operator should use technologies and/or procedures to assure that unauthorised content cannot enter the EFB system through these media.

The required level of EFB security depends on the criticality of the functions used (e.g. an EFB which only holds a list of fuel prices may require less security than an EFB used for performance calculations).

Beyond the level of security required to assure that the EFB can properly perform its intended functions, the level of security ultimately required depends on the capabilities of the EFB.

(g) Electronic signatures

Some applicable requirements may require a signature when issuing or accepting a document (e.g. load sheet, technical logbook, notification to captain (NOTOC)). In order to be accepted as being equivalent to a handwritten signature, electronic signatures used in EFB applications need, as a minimum, to fulfil the same objectives and should assure the same degree of security as the handwritten or any other form of signature that they are intended to replace. AMC1 NCC.POL.110(c) provides means to comply with the required handwritten signature or its equivalent for mass and balance documentation.

On a general basis, in the case of required signatures, an operator should have in place procedures for electronic signatures that guarantee:

(1) their uniqueness: a signature should identify a specific individual and be difficult to duplicate;

(2) their significance: an individual using an electronic signature should take deliberate and recognisable action to affix their signature;

(3) their scope: the scope of the information being affirmed with an electronic signature should be clear to the signatory and to the subsequent readers of the record, record entry, or document;

(4) their security: the security of an individual's handwritten signature is maintained by ensuring that it is difficult for another individual to duplicate or alter it;

(5) their non-repudiation: an electronic signature should prevent a signatory from denying that they affixed a signature to a specific record, record entry, or document; the more difficult it is to duplicate a signature, the more likely it is that the signature was created by the signatory; and

(6) their traceability: an electronic signature should provide positive traceability to the individual who signed a record, record entry, or any other document.

An electronic signature should retain those qualities of a handwritten signature that guarantee its uniqueness. Systems using either a PIN or a password with limited validity (timewise) may be appropriate in providing positive traceability to the individual who affixed it. Advanced electronic signatures, qualified certificates and secured signature-creation devices are typically not required for EFB operations.

AMC3 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

FLIGHT CREW TRAINING

Flight crew members should be given specific training on the use of the EFB system before it is

operationally used.

Training should at least include the following:

(a) an overview of the system architecture;

(b) preflight checks of the system;

(c) limitations of the system;

(d) specific training on the use of each application and the conditions under which the EFB may and may not be used;

(e) restrictions on the use of the system, including cases where the entire system or some parts of it are not available;

(f) procedures for normal operations, including cross-checking of data entry and computed information;

(g) procedures to handle abnormal situations, such as a late runway change or a diversion to an alternate aerodrome;

(h) procedures to handle emergency situations;

(i) phases of the flight when the EFB system may and may not be used;

(j) human factors considerations, including crew resource management (CRM), on the use of the EFB;

(k) additional training for new applications or changes to the hardware configuration;

(l) actions following the failure of component(s) of the EFB, including cases of battery smoke or fire; and

(m) management of conflicting information.

AMC4 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

PERFORMANCE AND MASS AND BALANCE APPLICATIONS

(a) General

Performance and mass and balance applications should be based on existing published data found in the AFM or performance manual, and should account for the applicable CAT.POL performance requirements. The applications may use algorithms or data spreadsheets to determine results. They may have the capability to interpolate within the information contained in the published data for the particular aircraft but should not extrapolate beyond it.

To protect against intentional and unintentional modifications, the integrity of the database files related to performance and mass and balance (the performance database, airport database, etc.) should be checked by the programme before performing any calculations. This check can be run once at the start-up of the application.

Each software version should be identified by a unique version number. The performance and mass and balance applications should record each computation performed (inputs and outputs) and the operator should ensure that this information is retained for at least 3 months.

The operator should ensure that aircraft performance or mass and balance data provided by the application is correct compared with the data derived from the AFM (e.g. for take-off and landing performance data) or from other reference data sources (e.g. mass and balance manuals or databases, in-flight performance manuals or databases) under a representative cross-check of conditions (e.g. for take-off and landing performance applications: take-off and landing performance data on dry, wet and contaminated runways, with different wind conditions and aerodrome pressure altitudes, etc.).

The operator should define any new roles that the flight crew and, if applicable, the flight dispatcher, may have in creating, reviewing, and using performance calculations supported by EFB systems.

(b) Testing

The verification of the compliance of a performance or mass and balance application should include software testing activities performed with the software version candidate for operational use.

The testing can be performed either by the operator or a third party, as long as the testing process is documented and the responsibilities identified.

The testing activities should include reliability testing and accuracy testing.

Reliability testing should show that the application in its operating environment (operating system (OS) and hardware included) is stable and deterministic, i.e. identical answers are generated each time the process is entered with identical parameters.

Accuracy testing should demonstrate that the aircraft performance or mass and balance computations provided by the application are correct in comparison with data derived from the AFM or other reference data sources, under a representative cross section of conditions (e.g. for take-off and landing performance applications: runway state and slope, different wind conditions and pressure altitudes, various aircraft configurations including failures with a performance impact, etc.).

The verification should include a sufficient number of comparison results from representative calculations throughout the entire operating envelope of the aircraft, considering corner points, routine and break points.

Any difference compared to the reference data that is judged significant should be examined. When differences are due to more conservative calculations or reduced margins that were purposely built into the approved data, this approach should be clearly specified. Compliance with the applicable certification and operational rules needs to be assessed in any case.

The testing method should be described. The testing may be automated when all the required data is available in an appropriate electronic format, but in addition to performing thorough monitoring of the correct functioning and design of the testing tools and procedures, operators are strongly suggested to perform additional manual verification. It could be based on a few scenarios for each chart or table of the reference data, including both operationally representative scenarios and 'corner-case' scenarios.

The testing of a software revision should, in addition, include non-regression testing and testing of any fix or change.

Furthermore, an operator should perform testing related to its customisation of the applications and to any element pertinent to its operation that was not covered at an earlier stage (e.g. airport database verification).

(c) Procedures

Specific care is needed regarding flight crew procedures concerning take-off and landing performance or mass and balance applications. Flight crew procedures should ensure that:

(1) calculations are performed independently by each flight crew member before data outputs are accepted for use;

(2) a formal cross-check is made before data outputs are accepted for use; such cross-checks should utilise the independent calculations described above, together with the output of the same data from other sources on the aircraft;

(3) a gross-error check is performed before data outputs are accepted for use; such gross-error checks may use either a 'rule of thumb' or the output of the same data from other sources on the aircraft; and

(4) in the event of a loss of functionality of an EFB through either the loss of a single application, or the failure of the device hosting the application, an equivalent level of safety can be maintained; consistency with the EFB risk assessment assumptions should be confirmed.

(d) Training

The training should emphasise the importance of executing all take-off and landing performance or mass and balance calculations in accordance with the SOPs to assure fully independent calculations.

Furthermore, due to the optimisation at different levels brought by performance applications, the flight crew members may be confronted with new procedures and different aircraft behaviour (e.g. the use of multiple flap settings for take-off). The training should be designed and provided accordingly.

Where an application allows the computing of both dispatch results (from regulatory and factored calculations) and other results, the training should highlight the specificities of those results. Depending on the representativeness of the calculation, the flight crew should be trained on any operational margin that might be required.

The training should also address the identification and the review of default values, if any, and assumptions about the aircraft status or environmental conditions made by the application.

(e) Specific considerations for mass and balance applications

In addition to the figures, a diagram displaying the mass and its associated centre of gravity (CG) should be provided.

(f) Human-factors-specific considerations

Input and output data (i.e. results) shall be clearly separated from each other. All the information necessary for a given calculation task should be presented together or be easily accessible.

All input and output data should include correct and unambiguous terms (names), units of measurement (e.g. kg or lb), and when applicable, an index system and a CG-position declaration (e.g. Arm/%MAC). The units should match the ones from the other flight-crew-compartment sources for the same kinds of data.

Airspeeds should be provided in a way that is directly useable in the flight crew compartment unless the unit clearly indicates otherwise (e.g. Knots Calibrated Air Speed (KCAS)). Any difference between the type of airspeed provided by the EFB application and the type provided by the AFM or flight crew operating manual (FCOM) performance charts should be mentioned in the flight crew guides and training material.

If the landing performance application allows the computation of both dispatch (regulatory, factored) and other results (e.g. in-flight or unfactored), the flight crew members should be made aware of the computation mode used.

(1) Inputs

The application should allow users to clearly distinguish user entries from default values or entries imported from other aircraft systems.

Performance applications should allow the flight crew to check whether a certain obstacle is included in the performance calculations and/or to include new or revised obstacle information in the performance calculations.

(2) Outputs

All critical assumptions for performance calculations (e.g. the use of thrust reversers, full or reduced thrust/power rating) should be clearly displayed. The assumptions made about any calculation should be at least as clear to the flight crew members as similar information would be on a tabular chart.

All output data should be available in numbers.

The application should indicate when a set of entries results in an unachievable operation (for instance, a negative stopping margin) with a specific message or colour scheme. This should be done in accordance with the relevant provisions on messages and the use of colours.

In order to allow a smooth workflow and to prevent data entry errors, the layout of the calculation outputs should be such that it is consistent with the data entry interface of the aircraft applications in which the calculation outputs are used (e.g. flight management systems).

(3) Modifications

The user should be able to easily modify performance calculations, especially when making last-minute changes.

Calculation results and any outdated input fields should be deleted when:

(i) modifications are entered;

(ii) the EFB is shut down or the performance application is closed; and

(iii) the EFB or the performance application have been in a standby or 'background' mode too long, i.e. such that it is likely that when it is used again, the inputs or outputs will be outdated.

AMC5 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

AIRPORT MOVING MAP DISPLAY (AMMD) APPLICATION WITH OWN-SHIP POSITION

(a) General

An AMMD application should not be used as the primary means of navigation for taxiing and should be only used in conjunction with other materials and procedures identified within the operating concept (see paragraph (e)).

When an AMMD is in use, the primary means of navigation for taxiing remains the use of normal procedures and direct visual observation out of the flight-crew-compartment window.

Thus, as recognised in ETSO-C165a, an AMMD application with a display of own-ship position is considered to have a minor safety effect for malfunctions that cause the incorrect depiction of aircraft position (own-ship), and the failure condition for the loss of function is classified as 'no safety effect'.

(b) Minimum requirements

AMMD software that complies with European Technical Standard Order ETSO-C165a is considered to be acceptable.

In addition, the system should provide the means to display the revision number of the software installed.

To achieve the total system accuracy requirements of ETSO-C165a, an airworthiness-approved sensor using the global positioning system (GPS) in combination with a medium-accuracy database compliant with EUROCAE ED-99C/RTCA DO-272C, 'User Requirements for Aerodrome Mapping Information,' (or later revisions) is considered one acceptable means.

Alternatively, the use of non-certified commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) position sources may be acceptable in accordance with AMC6 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2).

(c) Data provided by the AMMD software application developer

The operator should ensure that the AMMD software application developer provides the appropriate data including:

(1) installation instructions or equivalent as per ETSO-C165a Section 2.2 addressing:

(i) the identification of each specific EFB system computing platform (including the hardware platform and the operating system version) with which this AMMD software application and database was demonstrated to be compatible;

(ii) the installation procedures and limitations for each applicable platform (e.g. required memory resources, configuration of Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) antenna position);

(iii) the interface description data including the requirements for external sensors providing data inputs; and

(iv) means to verify that the AMMD has been installed correctly and is functioning properly.

(2) Any AMMD limitations, and known installation, operational, functional, or performance issues of the AMMD.

(d) AMMD software installation in the EFB

The operator should review the documents and the data provided by the AMMD developer, and ensure that the installation requirements of the AMMD software in the specific EFB platform and aircraft are addressed. Operators are required to:

perform any verification activities proposed by the AMMD software application developer, as well as identify and perform any additional integration activities that need to be completed;

(e) Operational procedures

Changes to operational procedures of the aircraft (e.g. flight crew procedures) should be documented in the operations manual or user's guide as appropriate. In particular, the documentation should highlight that the AMMD is only designed to assist flight crew members in orienting themselves on the airport surface so as to improve the flight crew members' positional awareness during taxiing and that it is not to be used as the basis for ground manoeuvring.

(f) Training requirements

The operator may use flight crew procedures to mitigate some hazards. These should include limitations on the use of the AMMD function or application. As the AMMD could be a compelling display and the procedural restrictions are a key component of the mitigation, training should be provided in support of an AMMD implementation.

All mitigation means that rely on flight crew procedures should be included in the flight crew training. Details of the AMMD training should be included in the operator's overall EFB training.

AMC6 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

USE OF COMMERCIAL OFF-THE-SHELF (COTS) POSITION SOURCE

COTS position sources may be used for AMMD EFB applications and for EFB applications displaying the own-ship position in-flight when the following considerations are complied with:

(a) Characterisation of the receiver:

The position should originate from an airworthiness approved GNSS receiver, or from a COTS GNSS receiver fully characterised in terms of technical specifications and featuring an adequate number of channels (12 or more).

The EFB application should, in addition to position and velocity data, receive a sufficient number of parameters related to the fix quality and integrity to allow compliance with the accuracy requirements (e.g. the number of satellites and constellation geometry parameters such as dilution of position (DOP), 2D/3D fix).

(b) Installation aspects:

COTS position sources are C-PEDs and their installation and use should follow the requirements of NCC.GEN.130.

If the external COTS position source transmits wirelessly, cybersecurity aspects have to be considered.

(c) Practical evaluation:

As variables can be introduced by the placement of the antennas in the aircraft and the characteristics of the aircraft itself (e.g. heated and/or shielded windshield effects), the tests have to take place on the type of aircraft in which the EFB will be operated, with the antenna positioned at the location to be used in service.

(1) COTS used as a position source for AMMD

The test installation should record the data provided by the COTS position source to the AMMD application.

The analysis should use the recorded parameters to demonstrate that the AMMD requirements are satisfactorily complied with in terms of the total system accuracy (taking into account database errors, latency effects, display errors, and uncompensated antenna offsets) within 50 metres (95 %). The availability should be sufficient to prevent distraction or increased workload due to frequent loss of position.

When demonstrating compliance with the following requirements of DO-257A, the behaviour of the AMMD system should be evaluated in practice:

(i) indication of degraded position accuracy within 1 second (Section 2.2.4 (22)); and

(ii) indication of a loss of positioning data within 5 seconds (Section 2.2.4 (23)); conditions to consider are both a loss of the GNSS satellite view (e.g. antenna failure) and a loss of communication between the receiver and the EFB.

(2) COTS position source used for applications displaying own-ship position in-flight:

Flight trials should demonstrate that the COTS GNSS availability is sufficient to prevent distraction or increased workload due to frequent loss of position.

AMC7 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

CHART APPLICATIONS

The navigation charts that are depicted should contain the information necessary, in an appropriate form, to perform the operation safely. Consideration should be given to the size, resolution and position of the display to ensure legibility whilst retaining the ability to review all the information required to maintain adequate situational awareness. The identification of risks associated with the human–machine interface, as part of the operator's risk assessment, is key to identifying acceptable mitigation means, e.g.:

(a) to establish procedures for reducing the risk of making errors;

(b) to control and mitigate the additional workload related to EFB use;

(c) to ensure the consistency of colour-coding and symbology philosophies between EFB applications and their compatibility with other flight crew compartment applications; and

(d) to consider aspects of crew resource management (CRM) when using an EFB system.

In the case of chart application displaying own-ship position in flight, AMC9 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) is applicable.

AMC8 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

IN-FLIGHT WEATHER APPLICATIONS

(a) GENERAL

An in-flight weather (IFW) application is an EFB function or application enabling the flight crew to access meteorological information. It is designed to increase situational awareness and to support the flight crew when making strategic decisions.

An IFW function or application may be used to access both information required to be on board (e.g. World Area Forecast Centre (WAFC) data) and supplemental weather information.

The use of IFW applications should be non-safety-critical and not necessary for the performance of the flight. In order for it to be non-safety-critical, IFW data should not be used to support tactical decisions and/or as a substitute for certified aircraft systems (e.g. weather radar).

Any current information from the meteorological data required to be carried on board or from aircraft primary systems should always prevail over the information from an IFW application.

The displayed meteorological information may be forecasted and/or observed, and may be updated on the ground and/or in flight. It should be based on data from certified meteorological services providers or other reliable sources evaluated by the operator.

The meteorological information provided to the flight crew should be as far as possible consistent with the information available to users of ground-based aviation meteorological information (e.g. operations control centre (OCC) staff, flight dispatchers, etc.) in order to establish common situational awareness and to facilitate collaborative decision-making.

(b) Display

Meteorological information should be presented to the flight crew in a format that is appropriate to the content of the information; coloured graphical depiction is encouraged whenever practicable.

The IFW display should enable the flight crew to:

(1) distinguish between observed and forecasted weather data;

(2) identify the currency or age and validity time of the weather data;

(3) access the interpretation of the weather data (e.g. the legend);

(4) obtain positive and clear indications of any missing information or data and determine areas of uncertainty when making decisions to avoid hazardous weather; and

(5) be aware of the data-link means status enabling necessary IFW data exchanges.

Meteorological information in IFW applications may be displayed, for example, as an overlay over navigation charts, over geographical maps, or it may be a stand-alone weather depiction (e.g. radar plots, satellite images, etc.).

If meteorological information is overlaid on navigation charts, special consideration should be given to HMI issues in order to avoid adverse effects on the basic chart functions.

In case of display of own-ship position in flight, AMC9 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) is applicable.

The meteorological information may require reformatting to accommodate, for example, the display size or the depiction technology. However, any reformatting of the meteorological information should preserve both the geo-location and intensity of the meteorological conditions regardless of projection, scaling, or any other types of processing.

(c) Training and procedures

The operator should establish procedures for the use of an IFW application.

The operator should provide adequate training to the flight crew members before using an IFW application. This training should address:

(1) limitations of the use of an IFW application:

(i) acceptable use (strategic planning only);

(ii) information required to be on board; and

(iii) latency of observed weather information and the hazards associated with utilisationof old information;

(2) information on the display of weather data:

(i) type of displayed information (forecasted, observed);

(ii) symbology (symbols, colours); and

(iii) interpretation of meteorological information;

(3) identification of failures and malfunctions (e.g. incomplete uplinks, data-link failures, missing info);

(4) human factors issues:

(i) avoiding fixation; and

(ii) managing workload.

AMC9 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

APPLICATIONS DISPLAYING OWN-SHIP POSITION IN-FLIGHT

(a) Limitations

The display of own-ship position in flight as an overlay to other EFB applications should not be used as a primary source of information to fly or navigate the aircraft.

Except on VFR flights over routes navigated by reference to visual landmark, the display of the own-ship symbol is allowed only in aircraft having a certified navigation display (moving map).

In the specific case of IFW applications, the display of own-ship on such applications is restricted to aircraft equipped with a weather radar.

(b) Position source and accuracy

The display of own-ship position may be based on a certified GNSS or GNSS-based (e.g. GPS/IRS) position from certified aircraft equipment or on a portable COTS position source in accordance with AMC6 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2).

The own-ship symbol should be removed and the flight crew notified if:

(1) the estimated accuracy exceeds 50 meters;

(2) the position data is reported as invalid by the GNSS receiver; or

(3) the position data is not received for 5 seconds.

(c) Charting data considerations

If the map involves raster images that have been stitched together into a larger single map, it should be demonstrated that the stitching process does not introduce distortion or map errors that would not correlate properly with a GNSS-based own-ship symbol.

(d) Human machine interface (HMI)

(1) Interface

The flight crew should be able to unambiguously differentiate the EFB function from avionics functions available in the cockpit, and in particular with the navigation display.

A sufficiently legible text label "AIRCRAFT POSITION NOT TO BE USED FOR NAVIGATION" or equivalent should be continuously displayed by the application if the own-ship position depiction is visible in the current display area over a terminal chart (i.e. SID, STAR, or instrument approach) or a depiction of a terminal procedure.

(2) Display of own-ship symbol

The own-ship symbol should be different from the ones used by certified aircraft systems intended for primary navigation.

If directional data is available, the own-ship symbol may indicate directionality. If direction is not available, the own-ship symbol should not imply directionality.

The colour coding should not be inconsistent with the manufacturer philosophy.

(3) Data displayed

The current map orientation should be clearly, continuously and unambiguously indicated (e.g., Track-up vs North-up).

If the software supports more than one directional orientation for the own-ship symbol (e.g., Track-up vs North-up), the current own-ship symbol orientation should be indicated.

The chart display in track-up mode should not create usability or readability issues. In particular, chart data should not be rotated in a manner that affects readability.

The application zoom levels should be appropriate for the function and content being displayed and in the context of providing supplemental position awareness.

The pilot should be able to obtain information about the operational status of the own-ship function (e.g. active, deactivated, degraded).

During IFR, day-VFR without visual references or night VFR flight, the following parameters' values should not be displayed:

(i) Track/heading;

(ii) Estimated time of arrival (ETA);

(iii) Altitude;

(iv) Geographical coordinates of the current location of the aircraft; and

(v) Aircraft speed.

(4) Controls

If a panning and/or range selection function is available, the EFB application should provide a clear and simple method to return to an own-ship oriented display.

A means to disable the display of the own-ship position should be provided to the flight crew.

(e) Training and procedures

The procedures and training should emphasise the fact that the display of own-ship position on charts or IFW EFB applications should not be used as a primary source of information to fly or navigate the aircraft or as a primary source of weather information.

(1) Procedures:

The following considerations should be addressed in the procedures for the use of charts or IFW EFB application displaying the own-ship position in-flight by the flight crew:

(i) Intended use of the display of own-ship position in-flight on charts or IFW EFB applications;

(ii) Inclusion of the EFB into the regular scan of flight deck systems indications. In particular, systematic cross-check with avionics before being used, whatever the position source; and

(iii) Actions to be taken in case of the identification of a discrepancy between the EFB and avionics.

(2) Training:

Crew members should be trained on the procedures for the use of the application, including the regular cross-check with avionics and the action in case of discrepancy.

GM1 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

IN-FLIGHT WEATHER APPLICATIONS

'Reliable sources' of data used by in-flight weather (IFW) applications are the organisations evaluated by the operator as being able to provide an appropriate level of data assurance in terms of accuracy and integrity. It is recommended that the following aspects be considered during that evaluation:

(a) The organisation should have a quality assurance system in place that covers the data source selection, acquisition/import, processing, validity period check, and the distribution phase;

(b) Any meteorological product provided by the organisation that is within the scope of meteorological information included in the flight documentation should originate only from authoritative sources or certified providers and should not be transformed or altered, except for the purpose of packaging the data in the correct format. The organisation's process should provide assurance that the integrity of those products is preserved in the data for use by the IFW application.

GM2 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

USE OF COMMERCIAL OFF-THE-SHELF (COTS) POSITION SOURCE – PRACTICAL EVALUATION

The tests should consist of a statistically relevant sample of taxiing. It is recommended to include taxiing at airports that are representative of the more complex airports typically accessed by the operator. Taxiing segment samples should include data that is derived from runways and taxiways, and should include numerous turns, in particular of 90 degrees or more, and segments in straight lines at the maximum speed at which the own-ship symbol is displayed. Taxiing segment samples should include parts in areas of high buildings such as terminals. The analysis should include at least 25 inbound and/or outbound taxiing segments between the parking location and the runway.

During the tests, any unusual events (such as observing the own-ship symbol in a location on the map that is notably offset compared to the actual position, the own-ship symbol changing to non-directional when the aircraft is moving, and times when the own-ship symbol disappears from the map display) should be noted. For the test, the pilot should be instructed to diligently taxi on the centre line.

GM3 NCC.GEN.131(b)(2) Use of electronic flight bags (EFBs)

APPLICATIONS DISPLAYING OWN-SHIP POSITION IN FLIGHT

The depiction of a circle around the EFB own-ship symbol may be used to differentiate it from the avionics one.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.135 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried

CONTENT OF INFORMATION

The information, compiled in a list, should include, as applicable:

(a) the number, colour and type of life-rafts and pyrotechnics;

(b) details of emergency medical supplies and water supplies; and

(c) the type and frequencies of the emergency portable radio equipment.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.140 Documents, manuals and information to be carried

GENERAL

The documents, manuals and information may be available in a form other than on printed paper. An electronic storage medium is acceptable if accessibility, usability and reliability can be assured.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(3) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

CERTIFICATE OF AIRWORTHINESS

The certificate of airworthiness should be a normal certificate of airworthiness or a restricted certificate of airworthiness issued in accordance with the applicable airworthiness requirements.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(11) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

CURRENT AND SUITABLE AERONAUTICAL CHARTS

(a) The aeronautical charts carried should contain data appropriate to the applicable air traffic regulations, rules of the air, flight altitudes, area/route and nature of the operation. Due consideration should be given to carriage of textual and graphic representations of:

  (1) aeronautical data including, as appropriate for the nature of the operation:

    (i) airspace structure;

    (ii) significant points, navigation aids (navaids) and air traffic services (ATS) routes;

    (iii) navigation and communication frequencies;

    (iv) prohibited, restricted and danger areas; and

    (v) sites of other relevant activities that may hazard the flight; and

  (2) topographical data, including terrain and obstacle data.

(b) A combination of different charts and textual data may be used to provide adequate and current data.

(c) The aeronautical data should be appropriate for the current aeronautical information regulation and control (AIRAC) cycle.

(d) The topographical data should be reasonably recent, having regard to the nature of the planned operation.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(12) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

PROCEDURES AND VISUAL SIGNALS FOR USE BY INTERCEPTING AND INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT

The procedures and the visual signals information for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft should reflect those contained in the International Civil Aviation Organisation's (ICAO) Annex 2. This may be part of the operations manual.

GM1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(1) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

AFM OR EQUIVALENT DOCUMENT

'Aircraft flight manual (AFM), or equivalent document' means the flight manual for the aircraft or other documents containing information required for the operation of the aircraft within the terms of its certificate of airworthiness, unless these data are available in the parts of the operations manual carried on board.

GM1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(9) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

JOURNEY LOG OR EQUIVALENT

'Journey log or equivalent' means in this context that the required information may be recorded in documentation other than a log book, such as the operational flight plan or the aircraft technical log.

GM1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(13) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

SEARCH AND RESCUE INFORMATION

This information is usually found in the State's aeronautical information publication.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

APPROPRIATE METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION

The appropriate meteorological information should be relevant to the planned operation and comprise the following:

(a) the meteorological information as follows:

(1) forecasts of upper-wind and upper-air temperature;

(2) SIGWX phenomena;

(3) METAR or, when issued, SPECI for the aerodromes of departure and intended landing, and for take-off, en-route and destination alternate aerodromes;

(4) TAF or amended TAF for the aerodromes of departure and intended landing, and for takeoff, en-route and destination alternate aerodromes;

(5) SIGMET, and, when issued, AIRMET and appropriate special air-reports relevant to the whole route;

(6) volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisory information relevant to the whole route.

However, when agreed between the aerodrome meteorological office and the operators concerned, flight documentation for flights of two hours' duration or less, after a short stop or turnaround, may be limited to the information operationally needed, but in all cases the flight documentation shall at least comprise the meteorological information listed in points (3), (4), (5) and (6);

and

(b) supplemental meteorological information:

(1) information other than that specified in point (a), which should be based on data from certified meteorological service providers; or

(2) information from other reliable sources of meteorological information that should be evaluated by the operator.

GM1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17) Documents, manuals, and information to be carried

DATA FROM CERTIFIED METEOROLOGICAL SERVICE PROVIDERS

In the context of point (b)(1) of AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17), the operator may consider that any meteorological information that is provided by the organisation within the scope of the meteorological information included in the flight documentation defined in point (a) of AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17) should originate only from authoritative sources or certified providers, and should not be transformed or tampered, except for the purpose of presenting the data in the correct format. The organisation's process should provide assurance that the integrity of such service is preserved in the data to be used by both flight crews and operators, regardless of their form.

GM2 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17) Documents, manuals, and information to be carried

INFORMATION FROM OTHER RELIABLE SOURCES OF METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION

In the context of point (b)(2) of AMC1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17), reliable sources of meteorological information are organisations that are able to provide an appropriate level of data assurance in terms of accuracy and integrity. The operator may consider in the evaluation that the organisation has a quality assurance system in place that covers source selection, acquisition/import, processing, validity period check, and distribution phase of data.

GM3 NCC.GEN.140(a)(17) Documents, manuals, and information to be carried

SUPPLEMENTAL METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION AND SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

Supplemental meteorological information: when operating under specific provisions and without the meteorological information from a certified service provider, the operator should use 'supplemental meteorological information', such as digital imagery. Related information can be found in point (e)(4) of AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.192. Supplementary information: it is included in point (a) of AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(18) and refers to meteorological information to be reported in specific cases such as freezing precipitation, blowing snow, thunderstorm, etc.

GM1 NCC.GEN.140(a)(19) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

DOCUMENTS THAT MAY BE PERTINENT TO THE FLIGHT

Any other documents that may be pertinent to the flight or required by the States concerned with the flight may include, for example, forms to comply with reporting requirements.

STATES CONCERNED WITH THE FLIGHT

The States concerned are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the flight.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(a) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

PRESERVATION OF RECORDED DATA FOR INVESTIGATION

(a) The operator should establish procedures to ensure that flight recorder recordings are preserved for the investigating authority.

(b) These procedures should include:

(1) instructions for flight crew members to deactivate the flight recorders immediately after completion of the flight and inform relevant personnel that the recording of the flight recorders should be preserved. These instructions should be readily available on board; and

(2) instructions to prevent inadvertent reactivation, test, repair or reinstallation of the flight recorders by operator personnel or during maintenance or ground handling activities performed by third parties.

GM1 NCC.GEN.145(a) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

REMOVAL OF RECORDERS IN CASE OF AN INVESTIGATION

The need for removal of the recorders from the aircraft is determined by the investigating authority with due regard to the seriousness of an occurrence and the circumstances, including the impact on the operation.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(b) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

INSPECTIONS AND CHECKS OF RECORDINGS

(a) The operator should perform an inspection of the FDR recording and the CVR recording every year unless one or more of the following applies:

(1) If the flight recorder records on magnetic wire or uses frequency modulation technology, the time interval between two inspections of the recording should not exceed 3 months.

(2) If the flight recorder is solid-state and the flight recorder system is fitted with continuous monitoring for proper operation, the time interval between two inspections of the recording may be up to 2 years.

(3) In the case of an aircraft equipped with two solid-state flight data and cockpit voice combination recorders, where

(i) the flight recorder systems are fitted with continuous monitoring for proper operation, and

(ii) the flight recorders share the same flight data acquisition,

a comprehensive inspection of the recording needs only to be performed for one flight recorder position. The inspection of the recordings should be performed alternately so that each flight recorder position is inspected at time intervals not exceeding 4 years.

(4) Where all the following conditions are met, the inspection of FDR recording is not needed:

(i) the aircraft flight data is collected in the frame of a flight data monitoring (FDM) programme;

(ii) the data acquisition of mandatory flight parameters is the same for the FDR and for the recorder used for the FDM programme;

(iii) an inspection similar to the inspection of the FDR recording and covering all mandatory flight parameters is conducted on the FDM data at time intervals not exceeding 2 years; and

(iv) the FDR is solid-state and the FDR system is fitted with continuous monitoring for proper operation.

(b) The operator should perform every 5 years an inspection of the data link recording.

(c) The operator should perform, at time intervals not exceeding 2 years, an inspection of the recording of flight recorders other than an FDR, which are installed on an aircraft in order to ensure compliance with CAT.IDE.A.191 or CAT.IDE.H.191;

(d) When installed, the aural or visual means for preflight checking the flight recorders for proper operation should be used on each day when the aircraft is operated. When no such means is available for a flight recorder, the operator should perform an operational check of this flight recorder at intervals not exceeding 150 flight hours or 7 calendar days of operation, whichever is considered more suitable by the operator.

(e) The operator should check every 5 years, or in accordance with the recommendations of the sensor manufacturer, that the parameters dedicated to the FDR and not monitored by other means are being recorded within the calibration tolerances and that there is no discrepancy in the engineering conversion routines for these parameters.

GM1 NCC.GEN.145(b) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

INSPECTION OF THE FLIGHT RECORDERS' RECORDINGS FOR ENSURING SERVICEABILITY

(a) The inspection of the recorded flight parameters usually consists of the following:

(1) Making a copy of the complete recording file.

(2) Converting the recording to parameters expressed in engineering units in accordance with the documentation required to be held.

(3) Examining a whole flight in engineering units to evaluate the validity of all mandatory parameters - this could reveal defects or noise in the measuring and processing chains and indicate necessary maintenance actions. The following should be considered:

(i) when applicable, each parameter should be expressed in engineering units and checked for different values of its operational range - for this purpose, some parameters may need to be inspected at different flight phases; and

(ii) (only applicable to an FDR) if the parameter is delivered by a digital data bus and the same data are utilised for the operation of the aircraft, then a reasonableness check may be sufficient; otherwise a correlation check may need to be performed:

(A) a reasonableness check is understood in this context as a subjective, qualitative evaluation, requiring technical judgement, of the recordings from a complete flight; and

(B) a correlation check is understood in this context as the process of comparing data recorded by the flight data recorder against the corresponding data derived from flight instruments, indicators or the expected values obtained during specified portion(s) of a flight profile or during ground checks that are conducted for that purpose.

(4) Retaining the most recent copy of the complete recording file and the corresponding recording inspection report that includes references to the documentation required to be held.

(b) When performing the inspection of an audio recording from a flight recorder, precautions need to be taken to comply with NCC.GEN.145(f)(1a). The inspection of the audio recording usually consists of:

(1) checking that the flight recorder operates correctly for the nominal duration of the recording;

(2) examining samples of in-flight audio recording from the flight recorder for evidence that the signal is acceptable on each channel and in all phases of flight; and

(3) preparing and retaining an inspection report.

(c) The inspection of the DLR recording usually consists of:

(1) Checking the consistency of the data link recording with other recordings for example, during a designated flight, the flight crew speaks out a few data link messages sent and received. After the flight, the data link recording and the CVR recording are compared for consistency.

(2) Retaining the most recent copy of the complete recording and the corresponding inspection report.

(d) When inspecting images recorded by a flight recorder, precautions need to be taken to comply with NCC.GEN.145(f)(3a). The inspection of such images usually consists of the following:

(1) checking that the flight recorder operates correctly for the nominal duration of the recording;

(2) examining samples of images recorded in different flight phases for evidence that the images of each camera are of acceptable quality; and

(3) preparing and retaining an inspection report.

GM2 NCC.GEN.145(b) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

MONITORING AND CHECKING THE PROPER OPERATION OF FLIGHT RECORDERS – EXPLANATION OF TERMS

For the understanding of the terms used in AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(b):

(a) 'operational check of the flight recorder' means a check of the flight recorder for proper operation. It is not a check of the quality of the recording and, therefore, it is not equivalent to an inspection of the recording. This check can be carried out by the flight crew or through a maintenance task.

(b) 'aural or visual means for preflight checking the flight recorders for proper operation' means an aural or visual means for the flight crew to check before the flight the results of an automatically or manually initiated test of the flight recorders for proper operation. Such a means provides for an operational check that can be performed by the flight crew.

(c) 'flight recorder system' means the flight recorder, its dedicated sensors and transducers, as well as its dedicated acquisition and processing equipment.

(d) 'continuous monitoring for proper operation' means for a flight recorder system, a combination of system monitors and/or built-in test functions which operates continuously in order to detect the following:

(1) loss of electrical power to the flight recorder system;

(2) failure of the equipment performing acquisition and processing;

(3) failure of the recording medium and/or drive mechanism; and

(4) failure of the recorder to store the data in the recording medium as shown by checks of the recorded data including, as reasonably practicable for the storage medium concerned, correct correspondence with the input data.

However, detections by the continuous monitoring for proper operation do not need to be automatically reported to the flight crew compartment.

GM3 NCC.GEN.145(b) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

CVR AUDIO QUALITY

Additional guidance material for performing the CVR recording inspection may be found in the document of the French Bureau d'Enquêtes et d'Analyses, titled 'Guidance on CVR recording inspection' and dated October 2018 or later.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(f)(1) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

USE OF AUDIO RECORDINGS FOR MAINTAINING OR IMPROVING SAFETY

(a) The procedure related to the handling of audio recordings from flight recorders and of their transcripts should be documented and signed by all parties (aircraft operator, crew members, maintenance personnel if applicable). This procedure should, as a minimum, define:

(1) the method to obtain the consent of all crew members and maintenance personnel concerned;

(2) an access and security policy that restricts access to audio recordings from flight recorders and their transcripts to specifically authorised persons identified by their position;

(3) a retention policy and accountability, including the measures to be taken to ensure the security of audio recordings from flight recorders and their transcripts and their protection from misuse. The retention policy should specify the period of time after which such audio recordings and identified transcripts are destroyed;

(4) a description of the uses made of audio recordings from flight recorders and their transcripts.

(5) the participation of flight crew member representatives in the assessment of audio recordings from flight recorders and their transcripts;

(6) the conditions under which advisory briefing or remedial training should take place; this should always be carried out in a constructive and non-punitive manner; and

(7) the conditions under which actions other than advisory briefing or remedial training may be taken for reasons of gross negligence or significant continuing safety concern.

(b) Each time an audio recording file from a flight recorder is read out under the conditions defined by NCC.GEN.145(f)(1):

(1) parts of the audio recording file that contain information with a privacy content should be deleted to the extent possible, and it should not be permitted that the detail of information with a privacy content is transcribed; and

(2) the operator should retain, and when requested, provide to the CAAT:

(i) information on the use made (or the intended use) of the audio recording file; and

(ii) evidence that the persons concerned consented to the use made (or the intended use) of the audio recording file.

(c) The person who fulfils the role of a safety manager should also be responsible for the protection and use of audio recordings from flight recorders and their transcripts, as well as for the assessment of issues and their transmission to the manager(s) responsible for the process concerned..

(d) In case a third party is involved in the use of audio recordings from flight recorders, contractual agreements with this third party should cover the aspects enumerated in (a) and (b).

AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(f)(1a) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

INSPECTION OF AUDIO RECORDINGS FOR ENSURING SERVICEABILITY

(a) When an inspection of the audio recordings from a flight recorder is performed for ensuring audio quality and intelligibility of recorded communications:

(1) the privacy of the audio recordings should be ensured (e.g. by locating the replay equipment in a separated area and/or using headsets);

(2) access to the replay equipment should be restricted to specifically authorised persons identified by their position;

(3) provision should be made for the secure storage of the recording medium, the audio recording files and copies thereof;

(4) the audio recording files and copies thereof should be destroyed not earlier than 2 months and not later than 1 year after completion of the inspection of the audio recordings, except that audio samples may be retained for enhancing this inspection (e.g. for comparing audio quality); and

(5) only the accountable manager of the operator and, when identified to comply with ORO.GEN.200, the person fulfilling the role of safety manager, should be entitled to request a copy of the audio recording file.

(b) The conditions enumerated in (a) should also be complied with if the inspection of the audio recordings is subcontracted to a third party. The contractual agreements with the third party should explicitly cover these aspects.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(f)(3) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

USE OF IMAGES FROM THE FLIGHT CREW COMPARTMENT FOR MAINTAINING OR IMPROVING SAFETY

(c) The procedure related to the handling of images of the flight crew compartment that are recorded by a flight recorder should be documented and signed by all parties involved (aircraft operator, crew member representatives nominated either by the union or the crew themselves, maintenance personnel representatives if applicable). This procedure should take into account Personal Data Protection Act. (PDPA) and, as a minimum, define the following aspects:

(1) the method to obtain the consent of all crew members and maintenance personnel concerned;

(2) an access and security policy that restricts access to the image recordings to specifically authorised persons identified by their position;

(3) a retention policy and accountability, including the measures to ensure the security of the image recordings and their protection from misuse;

(4) a description of the uses made of the image recordings;

(5) the participation of flight crew member representatives in the assessment of the image recordings;

(6) the conditions under which advisory briefing or remedial training should take place; this should always be carried out in a constructive and non-punitive manner; and

(7) the conditions under which actions other than advisory briefing or remedial training may be taken for reasons of gross negligence or significant continuing safety concern.

(d) Each time a recording file from a flight recorder and containing images of the flight crew compartment is read out for purposes other than ensuring the serviceability of that flight recorder:

(1) images that contain information with a privacy content should be deleted to the extent possible, and it should not be permitted that the detail of information with a privacy content is transcribed;

(2) the operator should retain, and when requested, provide the CAAT with:

(i) information on the use made (or the intended use) of the recording file; and

(ii) evidence that the crew members concerned consented to the use made (or the intended use) of the flight crew compartment images.

(e) The person fulfilling the role of safety manager should be responsible for the protection and use of images of the flight crew compartment that are recorded by a flight recorder, as well as for the assessment of issues and their transmission to the manager(s) responsible for the process concerned.

(f) In case a third party is involved in the use of images of the flight crew compartment that are recorded by a flight recorder, contractual agreements with this third party should cover the aspects enumerated in (a) and (b).

AMC1 NCC.GEN.145(f)(3a) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

INSPECTION OF IMAGES OF THE FLIGHT CREW COMPARTMENT FOR ENSURING SERVICEABILITY

(a) When images of the flight crew compartment recorded by a flight recorder are inspected for ensuring the serviceability of the flight recorder, and any body part of a crew member is likely to be visible on these images, then:

  (1) the privacy of the image recordings should be ensured (e.g. by locating the replay equipment in a separated area);

  (2) access to the replay equipment should be restricted to specifically authorised persons identified by their position;

  (3) provisions should be made for the secure storage of the recording medium, the image recording files and copies thereof;

  (4) the image recording files and copies thereof should be destroyed not earlier than 2 months and not later than 1 year after completion of the inspection of the image recordings. Images that do not contain any body part of a person may be retained for enhancing this inspection (e.g. for comparing image quality); and

  (5) only the accountable manager of the operator and, when identified to comply with ORO.GEN.200, the safety manager should be entitled to request a copy of the image recording files.

(b) The conditions enumerated in (a) should also be complied with if the inspection of the image recording is subcontracted to a third party. The contractual agreements with the third party should explicitly cover these aspects.

GM1 NCC.GEN.145(f) Handling of flight recorder recordings: preservation, production, protection and use

FLIGHT CREW COMPARTMENT

If there are no compartments to physically segregate the flight crew from the passengers during the flight, the 'flight crew compartment' in point (f) of NCC.GEN.145 should be understood as the area including:

(a) the flight crew seats;

(b) aircraft and engine controls;

(c) aircraft instruments;

(d) windshield and windows used by the flight crew to get an external view while seated at their duty station; and

(e) circuit breakers accessible by the flight crew while seated at their duty station.

AMC1 NCC.GEN.150(e) Transport of dangerous goods

DANGEROUS GOODS ACCIDENT AND INCIDENT REPORTING

(a) Any type of dangerous goods accident or incident, or the finding of:

  (1) undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods in cargo;

  (2) forbidden dangerous goods in mail; or

(3) forbidden dangerous goods in passenger or crew baggage, or on the person of a passenger or a crew member should be reported. For this purpose, the Technical Instructions consider that reporting of undeclared and misdeclared dangerous goods found in cargo also applies to items of operators' stores that are classified as dangerous goods.

(b) The first report should be dispatched within 72 hours of the event. It may be sent by any means, including e-mail, telephone or fax. This report should include the details that are known at that time, under the headings identified in (c). If necessary, a subsequent report should be made as soon as possible giving all the details that were not known at the time the first report was sent. If a report has been made verbally, written confirmation should be sent as soon as possible.

(c) The first and any subsequent report should be as precise as possible and contain the following data, where relevant:

(1) date of the incident or accident or the finding of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods;

(2) location and date of flight;

(3) description of the goods and the reference number of the air waybill, pouch, baggage tag, ticket, etc.;

(4) proper shipping name (including the technical name, if appropriate) and United Nations (UN)/identification (ID) number, when known;

(5) class or division and any subsidiary risk;

(6) type of packaging, and the packaging specification marking on it;

(7) quantity;

(8) name and address of the passenger, etc.;

(9) any other relevant details;

(10) suspected cause of the incident or accident;

(11) action taken;

(12) any other reporting action taken; and

(13) name, title, address and telephone number of the person making the report.

(d) Copies of relevant documents and any photographs taken should be attached to the report.

(e) A dangerous goods accident or incident may also constitute an aircraft accident, serious incident or incident. The criteria for reporting both types of occurrence should be met.

(f) The following dangerous goods reporting form should be used, but other forms, including electronic transfer of data, may be used provided that at least the minimum information of this AMC is supplied:

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8">DANGEROUS GOODS OCCURRENCE REPORT</td><td colspan="4">DGOR No:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">1. Operator:</td><td colspan="4">2. Date of Occurrence:</td><td colspan="4">3. Local time of occurrence:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="12">4. Flight date:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">5. Departure aerodrome:</td><td colspan="6">6. Destination aerodrome:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">7. Aircraft type:</td><td colspan="6">8. Aircraft registration:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">9. Location of occurrence:</td><td colspan="6">10. Origin of the goods:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="12">11. Description of the occurrence, including details of injury, damage, etc. (if necessary continue on the reverse of this form):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="9">12. Proper shipping name (including the technical name):</td><td colspan="3">13. UN/ID No (when known):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">14.Class/Division (when known):</td><td colspan="3">15. Subsidiary risk(s):</td><td colspan="3">16. Packing group:</td><td colspan="3">17. Category (Class 7 only):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">18. Type of packaging:</td><td colspan="3">19.Packaging specification marking:</td><td colspan="3">20. No of packages:</td><td colspan="3">21. Quantity
(or transport index, if applicable):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="12">22. Name and address of passenger, etc.:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="12">23. Other relevant information (including suspected cause, any action taken):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">24. Name and title of person making report:</td><td colspan="6">25. Telephone No:</td></tr>
</table>

26. Company:	27. Reporters ref:
28. Address:	29. Signature:
	30. Date:
Description of the occurrence (continuation)	

Notes for completion of the form:

(1) A dangerous goods accident is as defined in TCAR OPS Part DEF. For this purpose serious injury is as defined in the Air Navigation Act B.E.2497 and Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Occurrence Reporting Regulation The initial report should be dispatched unless exceptional circumstances prevent this. This occurrence report form, duly completed, should be sent as soon as possible, even if all the information is not available.

(2) Copies of all relevant documents and any photographs should be attached to this report.

(3) Any further information, or any information not included in the initial report, should be sent as soon as possible to the authorities identified in NCC.GEN.150(e).

(4) Providing it is safe to do so, all dangerous goods, packagings, documents, etc. relating to the occurrence should be retained until after the initial report has been sent to the authorities identified in NCC.GEN.150(e), and they have indicated whether or not these should continue to be retained.

GM1 NCC.GEN.150 Transport of dangerous goods

GENERAL

(a) The requirement to transport dangerous goods by air in accordance with the Technical Instructions is irrespective of whether:

(1) the flight is wholly or partly within or wholly outside the territory of a State; or

(2) an approval to carry dangerous goods in accordance with TCAR OPS Part SPA, Subpart G is held.

(b) The Technical Instructions provide that in certain circumstances dangerous goods, which are normally forbidden on an aircraft, may be carried. These circumstances include cases of extreme urgency or when other forms of transport are inappropriate or when full compliance with the prescribed requirements is contrary to the public interest. In these circumstances all the States concerned may grant exemptions from the provisions of the Technical Instructions provided that an overall level of safety that is at least equivalent to that provided by the Technical Instructions is achieved. Although exemptions are most likely to be granted for the carriage of dangerous goods that are not permitted in normal circumstances, they may also be granted in other circumstances, such as when the packaging to be used is not provided for by the appropriate packing method or the quantity in the packaging is greater than that permitted. The Technical Instructions also make provision for some dangerous goods to be carried when an approval has been granted only by the State of Origin and the CAAT.

(c) When an exemption is required, the States concerned are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the consignment and that of the operator. For the State of overflight, if none of the criteria for granting an exemption are relevant, an exemption may be granted based solely on whether it is believed that an equivalent level of safety in air transport has been achieved.

(d) The Technical Instructions provide that exemptions and approvals are granted by the national authority, which is intended to be the authority responsible for the particular aspect against which the exemption or approval is being sought. The operator should ensure that all relevant conditions on an exemption or approval are met.

(e) The exemption or approval referred to in (b) to (d) is in addition to the approval required by TCAR OPS Part SPA, Subpart G.

SUBPART B: OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES

AMC1 NCC.OP.100 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

USE OF OPERATING SITES

(a) The pilot-in-command should have available from a pre-survey or other publication, for each operating site to be used, diagrams or ground and aerial photographs, depiction (pictorial) and description of:

(1) the overall dimensions of the operating site;

(2) location and height of relevant obstacles to approach and take-off profiles and in the manoeuvring area;

(3) approach and take-off flight paths;

(4) surface condition (blowing dust/snow/sand);

(5) provision of control of third parties on the ground (if applicable);

(6) lighting, if applicable;

(7) procedure for activating the operating site in accordance with national regulations, if applicable;

(8) other useful information, for example details of the appropriate ATS agency and frequency; and

(9) site suitability with reference to available aircraft performance.

(b) Where the operator specifically permits operation from sites that are not pre-surveyed, the pilot-in-command should make, from the air, a judgement on the suitability of a site. At least (a)(1) to (a)(6) inclusive and (a)(9) should be considered.

GM1 NCC.OP.100 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

PUBLICATIONS

'Other publication' mentioned in AMC1 NCC.OP.100 refers to publication means, such as:

(a) civil as well as military aeronautical information publication;

(b) visual flight rules (VFR) guides;

(c) commercially available aeronautical publications; and

(d) non-commercially available publications.

GM1 NCC.OP.101 Altimeter check and settings

ALTIMETER SETTING PROCEDURES

The following paragraphs of ICAO Doc 8168 (PANS-OPS), Volume III provide recommended guidance on how to develop the altimeter setting procedure:

(a) 3.2 'Pre-flight operational test';

(b) 3.3 'Take-off and climb';

(c) 3.5 'Approach and landing'.

GM1 NCC.OP.105 Specification of isolated aerodromes — aeroplanes

USE OF AN AERODROME AS AN ISOLATED AERODROME

The concept of an isolated aerodrome allows the operator to use aerodromes that would otherwise be impossible or impractical to use with sufficient fuel to fly to the destination aerodrome and then to a destination alternate aerodrome, provided that operational criteria are used to ensure a safe-landing option, for example by specifying a PNR. If alternate fuel is carried, the operator is not required to consider the aerodrome isolated and use the aforementioned operational criteria.

AMC1 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

COMMERCIALLY AVAILABLE INFORMATION

An acceptable method of specifying aerodrome operating minima is through the use of commercially available information.

AMC2 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

GENERAL

(a) The aerodrome operating minima should not be lower than the values given in NCC.OP.111 or AMC3 NCC.OP.110 (c).

(b) Whenever practical approaches should be flown as stabilised approaches (SAps). Different procedures may be used for a particular approach to a particular runway.

(c) Whenever practical, non-precision approaches should be flown using the continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique. Different procedures may be used for a particular approach to a particular runway.

(a) For approaches not flown using the CDFA technique: when calculating the minima in accordance with NCC.OP.111, the applicable minimum runway visual range (RVR) should be increased by 200 m for Category A and B aeroplanes and by 400 m for Category C and D aeroplanes, provided the resulting RVR/converted meteorological visibility (CMV) value does not exceed 5 000 m. SAp or CDFA should be used as soon as facilities are improved to allow these techniques.

AMC3 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

TAKE-OFF OPERATIONS

(a) General

(1) Take-off minima should be expressed as VIS or RVR limits, taking into account all relevant factors for each aerodrome planned to be used and aircraft characteristics and equipment. Where there is a specific need to see and avoid obstacles on departure and/or for a forced landing, additional conditions, e.g. ceiling, should be specified.

(2) The pilot-in-command should not commence take-off unless the weather conditions at the aerodrome of departure are equal to or better than applicable minima for landing at that aerodrome, unless a weather-permissible take-off alternate aerodrome is available.

(3) When the reported VIS is below that required for take-off and RVR is not reported, a take-off should only be commenced if the pilot-in-command can determine that the visibility along the take-off runway/area is equal to or better than the required minimum.

(4) When no reported VIS or RVR is available, a take-off should only be commenced if the pilot-in-command can determine that the visibility along the take-off runway/area is equal to or better than the required minimum.

(b) Visual reference

(1) The take-off minima should be selected to ensure sufficient guidance to control the aircraft in the event of both a rejected take-off in adverse circumstances and a continued take-off after failure of the critical engine.

(2) For night operations, the prescribed runway lights should be in operation to mark the runway and any obstacles.

(c) Required RVR or VIS

(1) Aeroplanes

(i) For multi-engined aeroplanes, with such performance that in the event of a critical engine failure at any point during take-off the aeroplane can either stop or continue the take-off to a height of 1 500 ft above the aerodrome while clearing obstacles by the required margins, the take-off minima specified by the operator should be expressed as RVR or VIS values not lower than those specified in Table 1.

(ii) Multi-engined aeroplanes without the performance to comply with the conditions in (c)(1)(i) in the event of a critical engine failure may need to re-land immediately and to see and avoid obstacles in the take-off area. Such aeroplanes may be operated to the following take-off minima provided that they are able to comply with the applicable obstacle clearance criteria, assuming engine failure at the specified height:

(A) The take-off minima specified by the operator should be based on the height from which the one-engine-inoperative (OEI) net take-off flight path can be constructed.

(B) The RVR minima used should not be lower than either of the values specified in Table 1 or Table 2.

(iii) For single-engined complex aeroplane operations, the take-off minima specified by the operator should be expressed as RVR/CMV values not lower than those specified in Table 1 below.

Unless the operator is using a risk period, whenever the surface in front of the runway does not allow for a safe forced landing, the RVR values should not be lower than 800 m. In this case, the proportion of the flight to be considered starts at the lift-off position and ends when the aeroplane is able to turn back and land on the runway in the opposite direction or glide to the next landing site in case of power loss.

(iv) When the RVR or the VIS is not available, the commander should not commence take-off unless he or she can determine that the actual conditions satisfy the applicable take-off minima.

Table 1: Take-off — aeroplanes (without LVTO approval) RVR or VIS

Facilities	RVR or VIS (m)*
Day only: Nil**	500
Day: at least runway edge lights or runway centre line markings Night: at least runway edge lights or runway centre line lights and runway end lights	400

*: The reported RVR or VIS value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.

**: The pilot is able to continuously identify the take-off surface and maintain directional control.

Table 2 Take-off — aeroplanes (without LVTO approval)

Assumed engine failure height above the runway versus RVR or VIS

Assumed engine failure height above the take- off runway (ft)	RVR or VIS (m) **
<50	400
51 – 100	400
101 – 150	400
151 – 200	500
201 – 300	1 000
>300 *or if no positive take-off flight path can be constructed	1 500

*: The reported RVR or VIS value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.

(2) Helicopters

(i) For helicopters having a mass where it is possible to reject the take-off and land on the FATO in case of the critical engine failure being recognised at or before the take-off decision point (TDP), the operator should specify an RVR or VIS as take-off minima in accordance with Table 3.

(ii) For all other cases, the pilot-in-command should operate to take-off minima of 800 m RVR or VIS and remain clear of cloud during the take-off manoeuvre until reaching the performance capabilities of (c)(2)(i).

Table 3: Take-off — helicopters (without LVTO approval) RVR or VIS

Onshore aerodromes or operating sites with instrument flight rules (IFR) departure procedures	**RVR or VIS (m)**
No light and no markings (day only)	400 or the rejected take-off distance, whichever is the greater
No markings (night)	800
Runway edge/FATO light and centre line marking	400
Runway edge/FATO light, centre line marking and relevant RVR information	400
Offshore helideck *	
Two-pilot operations	400
Single-pilot operations	500

*: The take-off flight path to be free of obstacles.

AMC4 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

DETERMINATION OF DH/MDH FOR INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS — AEROPLANES

(a) The decision height (DH) to be used for a 3D approach operation or a 2D approach operation flown using the continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique should not be lower than the highest of:

(1) the obstacle clearance height (OCH) for the category of aircraft;

(2) the published approach procedure DH or minimum descent height (MDH) where applicable;

(3) the system minima specified in Table 4;

(4) the minimum DH permitted for the runway specified in Table 5; or

(5) the minimum DH specified in the AFM or equivalent document, if stated.

(b) (b) The MDH for a 2D approach operation flown not using the CDFA technique should not be lower than the highest of:.

(1) the OCH for the category of aircraft;

(2) (2) the published approach procedure MDH where applicable; (

(3) 3) the system minima specified in Table 4;

(4) (4) the lowest MDH permitted for the runway specified in Table 5; or

(5) (5) the lowest MDH specified in the AFM, if stated.

DETERMINATION OF DH/MDH FOR INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS — HELICOPTERS

(c) The DH or MDH should not be lower than the highest of:

(1) the OCH for the category of aircraft used;

(2) the published approach procedure DH or MDH where applicable;

(3) the system minima specified in Table 4;

(4) the lowest DH or MDH permitted for the runway/FATO specified in Table 6 if applicable; or

(5) the lowest DH or MDH specified in the AFM, if stated.

Table 4 System minima — all aircraft

Facility	Lowest DH/MDH (ft)
ILS/MLS/GLS	200
GNSS/SBAS (LPV)	200*
Precision approach radar (PAR)	200
GNSS/SBAS (LP)	250
GNSS (LNAV)	250
GNSS/Baro VNAV (LNAV/ VNAV)	250
LOC with or without DME	250
SRA (terminating at ½ NM)	250
SRA (terminating at 1 NM)	300
SRA (terminating at 2 NM or more)	350
VOR	300
VOR/DME	250
NDB	350
NDB/DME	300
VDF	350

* For localiser performance with vertical guidance (LPV), a DH of 200 ft may be used only if the published final approach segment (FAS) datablock sets a vertical alert limit not exceeding 35 m. Otherwise, the DH should not be lower than 250 ft. .

Table 5 Runway type minima — aeroplanes

Runway type	Lowest DH/MDH (ft)
Precision approach (PA) runway, category I	200
NPA runway	250
Non-Instrument runway	Circling minima as shown in Table 1 in NCC.OP.112

Table 6 Type of runway/FATO versus lowest DH/MDH — helicopters

Type of runway/FATO	Lowest DH/MDH (ft)
Precision approach (PA) runway, category I Non-precision approach (NPA) runway Non-instrument runway	200
Instrument FATO FATO	200 250

Table 6 does not apply to helicopter PinS approaches with instructions to 'proceed VFR'

AMC5 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

DETERMINATION OF RVR OR VIS FOR INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS — AEROPLANES

(a) The RVR or VIS for straight-in instrument approach operations should not be less than the greatest of the following:

(1) the minimum RVR or VIS for the type of runway used according to Table 7; or

(2) the minimum RVR determined according to the MDH or DH and class of lighting facility according to Table 8; or

(3) the minimum RVR according to the visual and non-visual aids and on-board equipment used according to Table 9. If the value determined in (1) is a VIS, then the result is a minimum VIS. In all other cases, the result is a minimum RVR.

(b) For Category A and B aeroplanes, if the RVR or VIS determined in accordance with point (a) is greater than 1 500 m, then 1 500 m should be used.

(c) If the approach is flown with a level flight segment at or above the MDA/H, then 200 m should be added to the RVR calculated in accordance with (a) and (b) for Category A and B aeroplanes and 400 m for Category C and D aeroplanes.

(d) The visual aids should comprise standard runway day markings, runway edge lights, threshold lights, runway end lights and approach lights as defined in Table 10.

Table 7 Type of runway versus minimum RVR or VIS — aeroplanes

Type of runway	Minimum RVR or VIS (m)
PA runway Category I	RVR 550
NPA runway RVR	750
Non-instrument runway	VIS according to Table 1 in NCC.OP.112 (Circling minima)

Table 8 RVR versus DH/MDH

DH or MDH (ft)			Class of lighting facility			
			FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
			RVR (m)			
200	-	210	550	750	1 000	1 200
211	-	240	550	800	1 000	1 200
241	-	250	550	800	1 000	1 300
251	-	260	600	800	1 100	1 300
261	-	280	600	900	1 100	1 300
281	-	300	650	900	1 200	1 400
301	-	320	700	1 000	1 200	1 400
321	-	340	800	1 100	1 300	1 500
341	-	360	900	1 200	1 400	1 600
361	-	380	1 000	1 300	1 500	1 700
381	-	400	1 100	1 400	1 600	1 800
401	-	420	1 200	1 500	1 700	1 900
421	-	440	1 300	1 600	1 800	2 000
441	-	460	1 400	1 700	1 900	2 100
461	-	480	1 500	1 800	2 000	2 200
481	-	500	1 500	1 800	2 100	2 300
501	-	520	1 600	1 900	2 100	2 400
521	-	540	1 700	2 000	2 200	2 400
541	-	560	1 800	2 100	2 300	2 400
561	-	580	1 900	2 200	2 400	2 400
581	-	600	2 000	2 300	2 400	2 400
601	-	620	2 100	2 400	2 400	2 400
621	-	640	2 200	2 400	2 400	2 400
641		660	2 300	2 400	2 400	2 400
661	and above		2 400	2 400	2 400	2 400

Table 9 Visual and non-visual aids and/or on-board equipment versus minimum RVR — aeroplanes

Type of approach	Facilities	Lowest RVR	
		Multi-pilot operations	Single-pilot operations
3D operations Final approach track offset ≤15° for category A and B aeroplanes or ≤5° for Category C and D aeroplanes	runway touchdown zone lights (RTZL) and runway centre line lights (RCLL)	No limitation	
	without RTZL and RCLL but using HUDLS or equivalent system; without RTZL and RCLL but using autopilot or flight director to the DH	No limitation	600 m
	No RTZL and RCLL, not using HUDLS or equivalent system or autopilot to the DH	750 m	800 m
3D operations	runway touchdown zone lights (RTZL) and runway centre line lights (RCLL) and Final approach track offset > 15° for Category A and B aeroplanes or Final approach track offset > 5° for Category C and D aeroplanes	800 m	1 000 m
	without RTZL and RCLL but using HUDLS or equivalent system; autopilot or flight director to the DH and Final approach track offset > 15° for Category A and B aeroplanes or Final approach track offset > 5° for Category C and D aeroplanes	800 m	1 000 m
2D operations	Final approach track offset ≤15° for category A and B aeroplanes or ≤5° for Category C and D aeroplanes	750 m	800 m
	Final approach track offset > 15° for Category A and B aeroplanes	1 000 m	1 000 m
	Final approach track offset >5° for Category C and D aeroplanes	1 200 m	1 200 m

Table 10 Approach lighting systems — aeroplanes

Class of lighting facility	Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights
FALS	CAT I lighting system (HIALS ≥720 m) distance coded centre line, barrette centre line
IALS	Simple approach lighting system (HIALS 420–719 m) single source, barrette

BALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS 210–419 m)
NALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

(e) For night operations or for any operation where credit for visual aids is required, the lights should be on and serviceable except as provided for in Table 15.

(f) Where any visual or non-visual aid specified for the approach and assumed to be available in the determination of operating minima is unavailable, revised operating minima will need to be determined.

AMC6 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

DETERMINATION OF RVR OR TYPE A INSTRUMENT APPROACH AND TYPE B CAT I INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS — HELICOPTERS

(a) For IFR operations, the RVR or VIS should not be less than the greatest of:

(1) the minimum RVR or VIS for the type of runway/FATO used according to Table 11;

(2) the minimum RVR determined according to the MDH or DH and class of lighting facility according to Table 12; or

(3) for PinS operations with instructions to 'proceed visually', the distance between the MAPt of the PinS and the FATO or its approach light system.

If the value determined in (1) is a VIS, then the result is a minimum VIS. In all other cases, the result is a minimum RVR.

(b) For PinS operations with instructions to 'proceed VFR', the VIS should be compatible with visual flight rules.

(c) For type A instrument approaches where the MAPt is within ½ NM of the landing threshold, the approach minima specified for FALS may be used regardless of the length of approach lights available. However, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, end lights and FATO/runway markings are still required.

(d) An RVR of less than 800 m should not be used except when using a suitable autopilot coupled to an ILS, MLS, GLS or LPV, in which case normal minima apply.

(e) For night operations, ground lights should be available to illuminate the FATO/runway and any obstacles.

(f) The visual aids should comprise standard runway day markings, runway edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights and approach lights as specified in Table 13.

(g) For night operations or for any operation where credit for runway and approach lights as defined in Table 13 is required, the lights should be on and serviceable except as provided for in Table 15.

Table 11 Type of runway/FATO versus minimum RVR or VIS — helicopters

Type of runway/FATO	**Minimum RVR or VIS**
Precision approach (PA) runway, category I NPA runway	RVR 550 m

Non-instrument runway	
Instrument FATO FATO	RVR 550 m RVR/VIS 800 m

Table 12 Onshore helicopter instrument approach minima

DH/MDH (ft)	Facilities versus RVR (m)			
	FALS	**IALS**	**BALS**	**NALS**
200	550	600	700	1 000
201–249	550	650	750	1 000
250–299	600*	700*	800	1 000
300 and above	750*	800	900	1 000

* Minima on 2D approach operations should be no lower than 800 m.

Table 13 Approach lighting systems — helicopters

Class of lighting facility	Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights
FALS	CAT I lighting system (HIALS ≥720 m) distance coded centre line, barrette centre line
IALS	Simple approach lighting system (HIALS 420–719 m) single source, barrette
BALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS 210–419 m)
NALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

AMC7 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

VISUAL APPROACH OPERATIONS

For a visual approach operation the RVR should not be less than 800 m.

AMC8 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

CONVERSION OF VISIBILITY TO CMV— AEROPLANES

The following conditions should apply to the use of CMV instead of RVR:

(a) If the reported RVR is not available, a CMV may be substituted for the RVR, except:

(1) to satisfy take-off minima; or

(2) for the purpose of continuation of an approach in LVO.

(b) If the minimum RVR for an approach is more than the maximum value assessed by the aerodrome operator, then CMV should be used.

(c) In order to determine CMV from visibility:

(1) for flight planning purposes, a factor of 1.0 should be used;

(2) for purposes other than flight planning, the conversion factors specified in Table 14 should be used.

Table 14 : Conversion of reported VIS to CMV

Light elements in operation	CMV = reported VIS x	
	Day	Night
HI approach and runway lights	1.5	2.0
Any type of light installation other than above	1.0	1.5
No lights	1.0	not applicable

AMC9 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

EFFECT ON LANDING MINIMA OF TEMPORARILY FAILED OR DOWNGRADED GROUND EQUIPMENT

(a) General

These instructions are intended for both pre-flight and in-flight use. It is, however, not expected that the pilot-in-command would consult such instructions after passing 1 000 ft above the aerodrome. If failures of ground aids are announced at such a late stage, the approach could be continued at the pilot-in-command's discretion. If failures are announced before such a late stage in the approach, their effect on the approach should be considered as described in Table 15 and, if considered necessary, the approach should be abandoned.

(b) Conditions applicable to Table 15:

(1) multiple failures of runway/FATO lights other than those indicated in Table 15 should not be acceptable;

(2) failures of approach and runway/FATO lights are acceptable at the same time, and the most demanding consequence should be applied; and

(3) failures other than ILS, GLS, or MLS affect RVR only and not DH.

Table 15 : Failed or downgraded equipment — effect on landing minima

Failed or downgraded equipment	Effect on landing minima	
	Type B	Type A
Navaid standby transmitter	No effect	
Outer marker (ILS only)	No effect if the required height or glide path can be checked using other means, e.g. DME fix	APV — not applicable
		NPA with FAF: no effect unless used as FAF
		If the FAF cannot be identified (e.g. no method available for timing of descent), NPA cannot be conducted
Middle marker (ILS only)	No effect	No effect unless used as MAPt
RVR Assessment Systems	No effect	
Approach lights	Minima as for NALS	
Approach lights except the last 210 m	Minima as for BALS	
Approach lights except the last 420 m	Minima as for IALS	
Standby power for approach lights	No effect	
Edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights	Day — no effect Night — not allowed	

Failed or downgraded equipment	Effect on landing minima	
	Type B	Type A
Centre line lights	Aeroplanes:No effect if flight director (F/D), HUDLS or auto-land;otherwise RVR 750 m Helicopters: No effect on CAT I and SA CAT I approach operations	No effect
Centre line lights spacing increased to 30 m	No effect	
TDZ lights	Aeroplanes: No effect if F/D, HUDLS or autoland; otherwise, RVR 750 m Helicopters: No effect	No effect
Taxiway lighting system	No effect	

GM1 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

AIRCRAFT CATEGORIES

(a) Aircraft categories should be based on the indicated airspeed at threshold (V_{AT}), which is equal to the stalling speed (V_{SO}) multiplied by 1.3 or where published 1-g (gravity) stall speed (V_{S1g}) multiplied by 1.23 in the landing configuration at the maximum certified landing mass. If both V_{SO} and V_{S1g} are available, the higher resulting V_{AT} should be used.

(b) The aircraft categories specified in the following table should be used.

Table 16: Aircraft categories corresponding to V_{AT} values

Aircraft category	VAT
A	Less than 91 kt
B	from 91 to 120 kt
C	from 121 to 140 kt
D	from 141 to 165 kt
E	from 166 to 210 kt

GM2 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

CONTINUOUS DESCENT FINAL APPROACH (CDFA) — AEROPLANES

(a) Introduction

(1) Controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) is a major hazard in aviation. Most CFIT accidents occur in the final approach segment of non-precision approaches; the use of stabilised-approach criteria on a continuous descent with a constant, predetermined vertical path is seen as a major improvement in safety during the conduct of such approaches. Operators should ensure that the following techniques are adopted as widely as possible, for all approaches.

(2) The elimination of level flight segments at MDA close to the ground during approaches, and the avoidance of major changes in attitude and power/thrust close to the runway that can destabilise approaches, are seen as ways to reduce operational risks significantly.

(3) The term CDFA has been selected to cover a flight technique for any type of NPA operation.

(4) The advantages of CDFA are as follows:

(i) the technique enhances safe approach operations by the utilisation of standard operating practices;

(ii) the technique is similar to that used when flying an ILS approach, including when executing the missed approach and the associated missed approach procedure manoeuvre;

(iii) the aeroplane attitude may enable better acquisition of visual cues;

(iv) the technique may reduce pilot workload;

(v) the approach profile is fuel-efficient;

(vi) the approach profile affords reduced noise levels;

(vii) the technique affords procedural integration with APV operations; and

(viii) when used and the approach is flown in a stabilised manner, CDFA is the safest approach technique for all NPA operations.

(b) CDFA

(1) Continuous descent final approach is defined in TCAR OPS Part DEF.

(2) An approach is only suitable for application of a CDFA technique when it is flown along a nominal vertical profile; a nominal vertical profile is not forming part of the approach procedure design, but can be flown as a continuous descent. The nominal vertical profile information may be published or displayed on the approach chart to the pilot by depicting the nominal slope or range/distance vs. height. Approaches with a nominal vertical profile are considered to be:

(i) NDB, NDB/DME (non-directional beacon/distance measuring equipment);

(ii) VOR (VHF omnidirectional radio range), VOR/DME;

(iii) LOC (localiser), LOC/DME;

(iv) VDF (VHF direction finder), SRA (surveillance radar approach); or

(v) GNSS/LNAV (global navigation satellite system/lateral navigation);

(3) Stabilised approach (SAp) is defined in TCAR OPS Part DEF.

(i) The control of the descent path is not the only consideration when using the CDFA technique. Control of the aeroplane’s configuration and energy is also vital to the safe conduct of an approach.

(ii) The control of the flight path, described above as one of the requirements for conducting an SAp, should not be confused with the path requirements for using the CDFA technique. The predetermined path requirements for conducting an SAp are established by the operator and published in the operations manual part B.

(iii) The predetermined approach slope requirements for applying the CDFA technique are established by the following:

(A) the published ‘nominal’ slope information when the approach has a nominal vertical profile; and

(B) the designated final approach segment minimum of 3 NM, and maximum, when using timing techniques, of 8 NM.

(iv) An SAp will never have any level segment of flight at DA/H or MDA/H, as applicable. This enhances safety by mandating a prompt missed approach procedure manoeuvre at DA/H or MDA/H.

(v) An approach using the CDFA technique will always be flown as an SAp, since this is a requirement for applying CDFA. However, an SAp does not have to be flown using the CDFA technique, for example a visual approach.

GM3 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

TAKE-OFF MINIMA — HELICOPTERS

To ensure sufficient control of the helicopter in IMC, the speed, before entering in IMC, should be above the minimum authorised speed in IMC, V_{mini}. This is a limitation in the AFM. Therefore, the lowest speed before entering in IMC is the highest of V_{toss} (take-off safety speed) and V_{mini}.

As example, V_{toss} is 45 kt and V_{mini} 60 kt. In that case, the take–off minima have to include the distance to accelerate to 60 kt. The take-off distance should be increased accordingly.

GM4 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

APPROACH LIGHTING SYSTEMS — ICAO AND FAA SPECIFICATIONS

The following table provides a comparison of the ICAO and FAA specifications.

Table 17 Approach lighting systems — ICAO and FAA specifications

Class of lighting facility	Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights
FALS	ICAO: CAT I lighting system (HIALS ≥ 720 m) distance coded centre line, Barrette centre line FAA: ALSF1, ALSF2, SSALR, MALSR, high or medium intensity and/or flashing lights, 720 m or more
IALS	ICAO: simple approach lighting system (HIALS 420 – 719 m) single source, Barrette FAA: MALSF, MALS, SALS/SALSF, SSALF, SSALS, high or medium intensity and/or flashing lights, 420 – 719 m
BALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS 210-419 m) FAA: ODALS, high or medium intensity or flashing lights 210 - 419 m
NALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

GM5 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

SBAS OPERATIONS

(a) SBAS LPV operations with a DH of 200 ft depend on an SBAS approved for operations down to a DH of 200 ft.

(b) The following systems are in operational use or in a planning phase:

  (1) European geostationary navigation overlay service (EGNOS), operational in Europe;

  (2) wide area augmentation system (WAAS), operational in the USA;

  (3) multi-functional satellite augmentation system (MSAS), operational in Japan;

  (4) system of differential correction and monitoring (SDCM), planned by Russia;

  (5) GPS-aided geo-augmented navigation (GAGAN) system, planned by India; and

  (6) satellite navigation augmentation system (SNAS), planned by China.

GM6 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

MEANS TO DETERMINE THE REQUIRED RVR BASED ON DH AND LIGHTING FACILITIES

The values in Table 8 are derived from the formula below:

$$RVR\ (m) = [(DH/MDH\ (ft) \times 0.3048)/\tan\alpha] — \text{length of approach lights (m)},$$

where α is the calculation angle, being a default value of 3.00° increasing in steps of 0.10° for each line in Table 8 up to 3.77° and then remaining constant. An upper RVR limit of 2 400 m has been applied to the table.

GM7 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

USE OF DH FOR NPAs FLOWN USING THE CDFA TECHNIQUE

The safety of the use of MDH as DH in CDFA operations has been verified by at least two independent analyses concluding that a CDFA using MDH as DH without any add-on is safer than the traditional step-down and level flight NPA operation. A comparison was made between the safety level of using MDH as DH without an add-on with the well-established safety level resulting from the ILS collision risk model (CRM). The NPA used was the most demanding, i.e. most tightly designed NPA, which offers the least additional margins. It should be noted that the design limits of the ILS approach design, e.g. the maximum glide path (GP) angle of 3,5 degrees, must be observed for the CDFA in order to keep the validity of the comparison.

There is a wealth of operational experience in Europe confirming the above-mentioned analytical assessments. It cannot be expected that each operator is able to conduct similar safety assessments, and this is not necessary. The safety assessments already performed take into account the most demanding circumstances at hand, like the most tightly designed NPA procedures and other 'worst-case scenarios'. The assessments naturally focus on cases where the controlling obstacle is located in the missed approach area.

However, it is necessary for operators to assess whether their cockpit procedures and training are adequate to ensure minimal height loss in case of a go-around manoeuvre. Suitable topics for the safety assessment required by each operator may include:

— understanding of the CDFA concept including use of the MDA/H as DA/H;

— cockpit procedures that ensure flight on speed, on path and with proper configuration and energy management;

— cockpit procedures that ensure gradual decision-making; and

— identification of cases where an increase of the DA/H may be necessary because of non-standard circumstances, etc.

GM8 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

INCREMENTS SPECIFIED BY THE AUTHORITY

Additional increments to the published minima may be specified by the CAAT to take into account certain operations, such as downwind approaches, single-pilot operations or approaches flown not using the CDFA technique.

GM9 NCC.OP.110 Aerodrome operating minima — general

USE OF COMMERCIALLY AVAILABLE INFORMATION

When an operator uses commercially available information to establish aerodrome operating minima, the operator remains responsible for ensuring that the material used is accurate and suitable for its operation, and that the aerodrome operating minima are calculated in accordance with the method specified in Part C of its operations manual.

The operator should apply the procedures in ORO.GEN.205 ‘Contracted activities’.

GM1 NCC.OP.110(b)(5) Aerodrome operating minima

VISUAL AND NON-VISUAL AIDS AND INFRASTRUCTURE

‘Visual and non-visual aids and infrastructure’ refers to all equipment and facilities required for the procedure to be used for the intended instrument approach operation. This includes but is not limited to lights, markings, ground- or space-based radio aids, etc.

GM1 NCC.OP.112 Aerodrome operating minima — circling operations with aeroplanes

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION

(a) The purpose of this Guidance Material is to provide operators with supplemental information regarding the application of aerodrome operating minima in relation to circling approaches.

(b) Conduct of flight — general:

   (1) the MDH and OCH included in the procedure are referenced to aerodrome elevation;

   (2) the MDA is referenced to mean sea level;

   (3) for these procedures, the applicable visibility is the VIS; and

   (4) operators should provide tabular guidance of the relationship between height above threshold and the in-flight visibility required to obtain and sustain visual contact during the circling manoeuvre.

(c) Instrument approach followed by visual manoeuvring (circling) without prescribed tracks:

   (1) When the aeroplane is on the initial instrument approach, before visual reference is stabilised, but not below MDA/H — the aeroplane should follow the corresponding IAP until the appropriate instrument MAPt is reached.

   (2) At the beginning of the level flight phase at or above the MDA/H, the instrument approach track should be maintained until the pilot:

      (i) estimates that, in all probability, visual contact with the runway of intended landing or the runway environment will be maintained during the entire circling procedure;

      (ii) estimates that the aeroplane is within the circling area before commencing circling; and

      (iii) is able to determine the aeroplane’s position in relation to the runway of intended landing with the aid of the appropriate visual references.

   (3) If the pilot cannot comply with the conditions in (c)(2) at the MAPt then a missed approach should be outexecuted in accordance with the IAP.

   (4) After the aeroplane has left the track of the initial instrument approach, the flight phase outbound from the runway should be limited to an appropriate distance, which is required to align the aeroplane onto the final approach. Such manoeuvres should be conducted to enable the aeroplane to:

(i) attain a controlled and stable descent path to the intended landing runway; and

(ii) remain within the circling area and in such a way that visual contact with the runway of intended landing or runway environment is maintained at all times.

(5) Flight manoeuvres should be carried out at an altitude/height that is not less than the circling MDA/H.

(6) Descent below the MDA/H should not be initiated until the threshold of the runway to be used has been appropriately identified. The aeroplane should be in a position to continue with a normal rate of descent and land within the TDZ.

(d) Instrument approach followed by a visual manoeuvring (circling) with prescribed track.

(1) The aeroplane should remain on the IAP until one of the following is reached:

(i) the prescribed divergence point to commence circling on the prescribed track; or

(ii) the MAPt.

(2) The aeroplane should be established on the instrument approach track in level flight at or above the MDA/H at or by the circling manoeuvre divergence point.

(3) If the divergence point is reached before the required visual reference is acquired, a missed approach should be initiated not later than the MAPt and completed in accordance with the initial instrument approach procedure.

(4) When commencing the prescribed circling manoeuvre at the published divergence point, the subsequent manoeuvres should be conducted to comply with the published routing and published heights/altitudes.

(5) Unless otherwise specified, once the aeroplane is established on the prescribed track(s), the published visual reference does not need to be maintained unless:

(i) required by the State of the aerodrome; or

(ii) the circling MAPt (if published) is reached.

(6) If the prescribed circling manoeuvre has a published MAPt and the required visual reference has not been obtained by that point, a missed approach should be executed in accordance with (e)(2) and (e)(3).

(7) Subsequent further descent below MDA/H should only commence when the required visual reference has been obtained.

(8) Unless otherwise specified in the procedure, final descent should not be commenced from MDA/H until the threshold of the intended landing runway has been identified and the aeroplane is in a position to continue with a normal rate of descent to land within the TDZ.

(e) Missed approach

(1) Missed approach during the instrument procedure prior to circling:

(i) if the missed approach procedure is required to be flown when the aeroplane is positioned on the instrument approach track and before commencing the circling manoeuvre, the published missed approach for the instrument approach should be followed; or

(ii) if the IAP is carried out with the aid of an ILS, MLS or a stabilised approach (SAp), the MAPt associated with an ILS or an MLS procedure without glide path (GP-out procedure) or the SAp, where applicable, should be used.

(2) If a prescribed missed approach is published for the circling manoeuvre, this overrides the manoeuvres prescribed below.

(3) If visual reference is lost while circling to land after the aeroplane has departed from the initial instrument approach track, the missed approach specified for that particular instrument approach should be followed. It is expected that the pilot will make an initial climbing turn toward the intended landing runway to a position overhead of the aerodrome where the pilot will establish the aeroplane in a climb on the instrument missed approach segment.

(4) The aeroplane should not leave the visual manoeuvring (circling) area, which is obstacle protected, unless:

(i) established on the appropriate missed approach procedure; or

(ii) at minimum sector altitude (MSA).

(5) All turns should be made in the same direction and the aeroplane should remain within the circling protected area while climbing either:

(i) to the altitude assigned to any published circling missed approach manoeuvre if applicable;

(ii) to the altitude assigned to the missed approach of the initial instrument approach;

(iii) to the MSA;

(iv) to the minimum holding altitude (MHA) applicable for transition to a holding facility or fix, or continue to climb to an MSA; or

(v) as directed by ATS.

When the missed approach procedure is commenced on the 'downwind' leg of the circling manoeuvre, an 'S' turn may be undertaken to align the aeroplane on the initial instrument approach missed approach path, provided the aeroplane remains within the protected circling area.

The pilot-in-command should be responsible for ensuring adequate terrain clearance during the above-stipulated manoeuvres, particularly during the execution of a missed approach initiated by ATS.

(6) Because the circling manoeuvre may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to establish the aeroplane on the prescribed missed approach course depending on its position at the time visual reference is lost. In particular, all turns are to be in the prescribed direction if this is restricted, e.g. to the west/east (left or right hand) to remain within the protected circling area.

(7) If a missed approach procedure is published for a particular runway onto which the aeroplane is conducting a circling approach and the aeroplane has commenced a manoeuvre to align with the runway, the missed approach for this direction may be accomplished. The ATS unit should be informed of the intention to fly the published missed approach procedure for that particular runway.

(8) The pilot-in-command should advise ATS when any missed approach procedure has been commenced, the height/altitude the aeroplane is climbing to and the position the aeroplane is proceeding towards and/or heading the aeroplane is established on

AMC1 NCC.OP.115 Departure and approach procedures

APPROACH FLIGHT TECHNIQUE — AEROPLANES

(a) All approach operations should be flown as SAp operations.

(b) The CDFA technique should be used for NPA procedures.

AMC1 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

PBN OPERATIONS

For operations where a navigation specification for performance-based navigation (PBN) has been prescribed and no specific approval is required in accordance with SPA.PBN.100, the operator should:

(a) establish operating procedures specifying:

(1) normal, abnormal and contingency procedures;

(2) electronic navigation database management; and

(3) relevant entries in the minimum equipment list (MEL);

(b) specify the flight crew qualification and proficiency constraints and ensure that the training programme for relevant personnel is consistent with the intended operation; and

(c) ensure continued airworthiness of the area navigation system.

AMC2 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

MONITORING AND VERIFICATION

(a) Preflight and general considerations

(1) At navigation system initialisation, the flight crew should confirm that the navigation database is current and verify that the aircraft position has been entered correctly, if required.

(2) The active flight plan, if applicable, should be checked by comparing the charts or other applicable documents with navigation equipment and displays. This includes confirmation of the departing runway and the waypoint sequence, reasonableness of track angles and distances, any altitude or speed constraints, and, where possible, which waypoints are fly-by and which are fly-over. Where relevant, the RF leg arc radii should be confirmed.

(3) The flight crew should check that the navigation aids critical to the operation of the intended PBN procedure are available.

(4) The flight crew should confirm the navigation aids that should be excluded from the operation, if any.

(5) An arrival, approach or departure procedure should not be used if the validity of the procedure in the navigation database has expired.

(6) The flight crew should verify that the navigation systems required for the intended operation are operational.

(b) Departure

(1) Prior to commencing a take-off on a PBN procedure, the flight crew should check that the indicated aircraft position is consistent with the actual aircraft position at the start of the take-off roll (aeroplanes) or lift-off (helicopters).

(2) Where GNSS is used, the signal should be acquired before the take-off roll (aeroplanes) or lift-off (helicopters) commences.

(3) Unless automatic updating of the actual departure point is provided, the flight crew should ensure initialisation on the runway or FATO by means of a manual runway threshold or intersection update, as applicable. This is to preclude any inappropriate or inadvertent position shift after take-off.

(c) Arrival and approach

(1) The flight crew should verify that the navigation system is operating correctly and the correct arrival procedure and runway (including any applicable transition) are entered and properly depicted.

(2) Any published altitude and speed constraints should be observed.

(3) The flight crew should check approach procedures (including alternate aerodromes if needed) as extracted by the system (e.g. CDU flight plan page) or presented graphically on the moving map, in order to confirm the correct loading and the reasonableness of the procedure content.

(4) Prior to commencing the approach operation (before the IAF), the flight crew should verify the correctness of the loaded procedure by comparison with the appropriate approach charts. This check should include:

(i) the waypoint sequence;

(ii) reasonableness of the tracks and distances of the approach legs and the accuracy of the inbound course; and

(iii) the vertical path angle, if applicable.

(d) Altimetry settings for RNP APCH operations using Baro VNAV

(1) Barometric settings

(i) The flight crew should set and confirm the correct altimeter setting and check that the two altimeters provide altitude values that do not differ more than 100 ft at the most at or before the FAF.

(ii) The flight crew should fly the procedure with:

(A) a current local altimeter setting source available — a remote or regional altimeter setting source should not be used; and

(B) the QNH/QFE, as appropriate, set on the aircraft's altimeters.

(2) Temperature compensation

(i) For RNP APCH operations to LNAV/VNAV minima using Baro VNAV:

(A) the flight crew should not commence the approach when the aerodrome temperature is outside the promulgated aerodrome temperature limits for the procedure unless the area navigation system is equipped with approved temperature compensation for the final approach;

(B) when the temperature is within promulgated limits, the flight crew should not make compensation to the altitude at the FAF;

(C) since only the final approach segment is protected by the promulgated aerodrome temperature limits, the flight crew should consider the effect of temperature on terrain and obstacle clearance in other phases of flight.

(ii) For RNP APCH operations to LNAV minima, the flight crew should consider the effect of temperature on terrain and obstacle clearance in all phases of flight, in particular on any step-down fix.

(e) Sensor and lateral navigation accuracy selection

(1) For multi-sensor systems, the flight crew should verify, prior to approach, that the GNSS sensor is used for position computation.

(2) Flight crew of aircraft with RNP input selection capability should confirm that the indicated RNP value is appropriate for the PBN operation.

AMC3 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

MANAGAMENT OF THE NAVIGATION DATABASE

(a) For RNAV 1, RNAV 2, RNP 1, RNP 2, and RNP APCH, the flight crew should neither insert nor modify waypoints by manual entry into a procedure (departure, arrival or approach) that has been retrieved from the database. User-defined data may be entered and used for waypoint altitude/speed constraints on a procedure where said constraints are not included in the navigation database coding.

(b) For RNP 4 operations, the flight crew should not modify waypoints that have been retrieved from the database. User-defined data (e.g. for flex-track routes) may be entered and used.

The lateral and vertical definition of the flight path between the FAF and the missed approach point (MAPt) retrieved from the database should not be revised by the flight crew.

AMC4 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

DISPLAYS AND AUTOMATION

(a) For RNAV 1, RNP 1, and RNP APCH operations, the flight crew should use a lateral deviation indicator, and where available, flight director and/or autopilot in lateral navigation mode.

(b) The appropriate displays should be selected so that the following information can be monitored:

(1) the computed desired path;

(2) aircraft position relative to the lateral path (cross-track deviation) for FTE monitoring;

(3) aircraft position relative to the vertical path (for a 3D operation).

(c) The flight crew of an aircraft with a lateral deviation indicator (e.g. CDI) should ensure that lateral deviation indicator scaling (full-scale deflection) is suitable for the navigation accuracy associated with the various segments of the procedure.

(d) The flight crew should maintain procedure centrelines unless authorised to deviate by ATC or demanded by emergency conditions.

(e) Cross-track error/deviation (the difference between the area-navigation-system-computed path and the aircraft-computed position) should normally be limited to ± ½ time the RNAV/RNP value associated with the procedure. Brief deviations from this standard (e.g. overshoots or undershoots during and immediately after turns) up to a maximum of 1 time the RNAV/RNP value should be allowable.

(f) For a 3D approach operation, the flight crew should use a vertical deviation indicator and, where required by AFM limitations, a flight director or autopilot in vertical navigation mode.

(g) Deviations below the vertical path should not exceed 75 ft at any time, or half-scale deflection where angular deviation is indicated, and not more than 75 ft above the vertical profile, or half-scale deflection where angular deviation is indicated, at or below 1 000 ft above aerodrome level. The flight crew should execute a missed approach if the vertical deviation exceeds this criterion, unless the flight crew has in sight the visual references required to continue the approach.

AMC5 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

VECTORING AND POSITIONING

(a) ATC tactical interventions in the terminal area may include radar headings, 'direct to' clearances which bypass the initial legs of an approach procedure, interceptions of an initial or intermediate segments of an approach procedure or the insertion of additional waypoints loaded from the database.

(b) In complying with ATC instructions, the flight crew should be aware of the implications for the navigation system.

(c) 'Direct to' clearances may be accepted to the IF provided that it is clear to the flight crew that the aircraft will be established on the final approach track at least 2 NM before the FAF.

(d) 'Direct to' clearance to the FAF should not be acceptable. Modifying the procedure to intercept the final approach track prior to the FAF should be acceptable for radar-vectored arrivals or otherwise only with ATC approval.

(e) The final approach trajectory should be intercepted no later than the FAF in order for the aircraft to be correctly established on the final approach track before starting the descent (to ensure terrain and obstacle clearance).

(f) 'Direct to' clearances to a fix that immediately precede an RF leg should not be permitted.

(g) For parallel offset operations en route in RNP 4 and A-RNP, transitions to and from the offset track should maintain an intercept angle of no more than 45° unless specified otherwise by ATC.

AMC6 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

ALERTING AND ABORT

(a) Unless the flight crew has sufficient visual reference to continue the approach operation to a safe landing, an RNP APCH operation should be discontinued if:

 (1) navigation system failure is annunciated (e.g. warning flag);

 (2) lateral or vertical deviations exceed the tolerances;

 (3) loss of the on-board monitoring and alerting system.

(b) Discontinuing the approach operation may not be necessary for a multi-sensor navigation system that includes demonstrated RNP capability without GNSS in accordance with the AFM.

(c) Where vertical guidance is lost while the aircraft is still above 1 000 ft AGL, the flight crew may decide to continue the approach to LNAV minima, when supported by the navigation system.

AMC7 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

CONTINGENCY PROCEDURES

(a) The flight crew should make the necessary preparation to revert to a conventional arrival procedure where appropriate. The following conditions should be considered:

  (1) failure of the navigation system components including navigation sensors, and a failure effecting flight technical error (e.g. failures of the flight director or autopilot);

  (2) multiple system failures affecting aircraft performance;

  (3) coasting on inertial sensors beyond a specified time limit; and

  (4) RAIM (or equivalent) alert or loss of integrity function.

(b) In the event of loss of PBN capability, the flight crew should invoke contingency procedures and navigate using an alternative means of navigation.

(c) The flight crew should notify ATC of any problem with PBN capability.

(d) In the event of communication failure, the flight crew should continue with the operation in accordance with published lost communication procedures.

AMC8 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

RNAV 10

(a) Operating procedures and routes should take account of the RNAV 10 time limit declared for the inertial system, if applicable, considering also the effect of weather conditions that could affect flight duration in RNAV 10 airspace.

(b) The operator may extend RNAV 10 inertial navigation time by position updating. The operator should calculate, using statistically-based typical wind scenarios for each planned route, points at which updates can be made, and the points at which further updates will not be possible.

GM1 NCC.OP.116 Performance-based navigation — aeroplanes and helicopters

DESCRIPTION

(a) For both, RNP X and RNAV X designations, the 'X' (where stated) refers to the lateral navigation accuracy (total system error) in NM, which is expected to be achieved at least 95 % of the flight time by the population of aircraft operating within the airspace, route or procedure. For RNP APCH and A-RNP, the lateral navigation accuracy depends on the segment.

(b) PBN may be required on notified routes, for notified procedures and in notified airspace.

RNAV 10

(c) For purposes of consistency with the PBN concept, this Regulation is using the designation 'RNAV 10' because this specification does not include on-board performance monitoring and alerting.

(d) However, it should be noted that many routes still use the designation 'RNP 10' instead of 'RNAV 10'. 'RNP 10' was used as designation before the publication of the fourth edition of ICAO Doc 9613 in 2013. The terms 'RNP 10' and 'RNAV 10' should be considered equivalent.

AMC1 NCC.OP.120 Noise abatement procedures

NADP DESIGN

(a) For each aeroplane type two departure procedures should be defined, in accordance with ICAO Doc. 8168 (Procedures for Air Navigation Services, 'PANS-OPS'), Volume I:

(1) noise abatement departure procedure one (NADP 1), designed to meet the close-in noise abatement objective; and

(2) noise abatement departure procedure two (NADP 2), designed to meet the distant noise abatement objective.

(b) For each type of NADP (1 and 2), a single climb profile should be specified for use at all aerodromes, which is associated with a single sequence of actions. The NADP 1 and NADP 2 profiles may be identical.

GM1 NCC.OP.120 Noise abatement procedures

TERMINOLOGY

(a) 'Climb profile' means in this context the vertical path of the NADP as it results from the pilot's actions (engine power reduction, acceleration, slats/flaps retraction).

(b) 'Sequence of actions' means the order in which these pilot's actions are done and their timing.

GENERAL

(c) The rule addresses only the vertical profile of the departure procedure. Lateral track has to comply with the standard instrument departure (SID).

EXAMPLE

(d) For a given aeroplane type, when establishing the distant NADP, the operator should choose either to reduce power first and then accelerate, or to accelerate first and then wait until slats/flaps are retracted before reducing power. The two methods constitute two different sequences of actions.

(e) For an aeroplane type, each of the two departure climb profiles may be defined by one sequence of actions (one for close-in, one for distant) and two above aerodrome level (AAL) altitudes/heights. These are:

(1) the altitude of the first pilot's action (generally power reduction with or without acceleration). This altitude should not be less than 800 ft AAL; or

(2) the altitude of the end of the noise abatement procedure. This altitude should usually not be more than 3 000 ft AAL.

These two altitudes may be runway specific when the aeroplane flight management system (FMS) has the relevant function that permits the crew to change thrust reduction and/or acceleration altitude/height. If the aeroplane is not FMS equipped or the FMS is not fitted with the relevant function, two fixed heights should be defined and used for each of the two NADPs.

AMC1 NCC.OP.125 Minimum obstacle clearance altitudes — IFR flights

GENERAL

Commercially available information specifying minimum obstacle clearance altitudes may be used.

AMC1 NCC.OP.131 Fuel/energy scheme — fuel/energy planning and in-flight re-planning policy — aeroplanes and helicopters

FUEL PLANNING POLICY

For the fuel planning policy, the amount of the required usable fuel for a flight should not be less than the sum of the following:

(a) taxi fuel that should take into account the local conditions at the departure aerodrome and the APU consumption;

(b) trip fuel that should include:

 (1) fuel for take-off and climb from the aerodrome elevation to the initial cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;
 (2) fuel from the top of climb to the top of descent, including any step climb/descent;
 (3) fuel from the top of descent to the point where the approach procedure is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival routing; and
 (4) fuel for making an approach and landing at the destination aerodrome;

(c) contingency fuel that should be:

 (1) 5 % of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight re-planning, 5 % of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight; or
 (2) an amount to fly for 5 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above the destination aerodrome in standard conditions,

 whichever is higher;

(d) destination alternate fuel that should be:

 (1) when the aircraft is operated with one destination alternate aerodrome:

  (i) fuel for a missed approach from the applicable DA/H or MDA/H at the destination aerodrome to the missed-approach altitude, taking into account the complete missed-approach procedure;

  (ii) fuel for climb from the missed-approach altitude to the cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;

  (iii) fuel for cruising from the top of climb to the top of descent, taking into account the expected routing;

  (iv) fuel for descent from the top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival routing; and

  (v) fuel for making an approach and landing at the destination alternate aerodrome;

 (2) when the aircraft is operated with no destination alternate aerodrome, the amount of fuel to hold for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) in standard conditions above the destination aerodrome elevation;
 (3) when the aerodrome of intended landing is an isolated aerodrome:

(i) for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, the amount of fuel required to fly either for 45 minutes plus 15 % of the flight time planned for cruising, including the final reserve fuel (FRF), or for 2 hours, whichever is less; or

(ii) for turbine-engined aeroplanes, the amount of fuel required to fly for 2 hours with normal cruise consumption above the destination aerodrome, including the FRF.

(e) FRF;

(f) additional fuel that should be the amount of fuel that allows the aircraft to proceed, in the event of an engine failure or loss of pressurisation, from the most critical point along the route to a fuel en route alternate (fuel ERA) aerodrome in the relevant aeroplane configuration, hold there for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above the aerodrome elevation in standard conditions, make an approach, and land;

(g) extra fuel if there are anticipated delays or specific operational constraints; and

(h) discretionary fuel, if required by the pilot-in-command.

AMC1 NCC.OP.140 Passenger briefing

TRAINING PROGRAMME

(a) The operator may replace the briefing/demonstration with a passenger training programme covering all safety and emergency procedures for a given type of aircraft.

(b) Only passengers who have been trained according to this programme and have flown on the aircraft type within the last 90 days may be carried on board without receiving a briefing/demonstration.

AMC1 NCC.OP.145(a) Flight preparation

ADEQUACY OF GROUND FACILITIES

When deciding on the adequacy of facilities and services available at an aerodrome of intended operation, the operator should:

(a) consult the aeronautical information publication (AIP) for information on the availability of rescue and firefighting services (RFFS) at the aerodrome of intended operation; and

(b) assess the level of safety risk that is associated with the aircraft type and nature of the operation in relation to the availability of RFFS.

GM1 NCC.OP.145(a) Flight preparation

ADEQUACY OF GROUND FACILITIES — SAFETY RISK ASSESSMENT OF OPERATIONS WITHOUT RESCUE AND FIREFIGHTING SERVICES AT THE AERODROME OF INTENDED OPERATION

To operate at an aerodrome with downgraded or unavailable rescue and firefighting services (RFFS), the operator may consider including in its operations manual, for each aircraft type, certain criteria to be used when conducting a safety risk assessment of such operations. For aircraft in rescue and firefighting (RFF) category 3 and higher, the conditions under which the pilot-in-command may decide to conduct a flight may include, but not be limited to the following:

(a) acceptable downgrades of RFFS for planning and in-flight purposes such as departure, destination, and alternate aerodromes;

(b) aircraft characteristics related to mass, landing speed, fuel capacity;

(c) length of route or flight duration;

(d) maximum number of passengers on board;

(e) possible limitation to daytime only or a certain time of the day (due to fatigue);

(f) weather constraints;

(g) aerodromes that are unacceptable with unavailable or downgraded RFFS.

GM1 NCC.OP.145(b) Flight preparation

OPERATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN

(a) Dependent on the length and complexity of the planned flight, an operational flight plan may be completed based on considerations of aircraft performance, other operating limitations and relevant expected conditions on the route to be followed and at the aerodromes/operating sites concerned.

(b) The operational flight plan used and the entries made during flight may contain the following items:

(1) aircraft registration;

(2) aircraft type and variant;

(3) date of flight;

(4) flight identification;

(5) names of flight crew members;

(6) duty assignment of flight crew members;

(7) place of departure;

(8) time of departure (actual off-block time, take-off time);

(9) place of arrival (planned and actual);

(10) time of arrival (actual landing and on-block time);

(11) type of operation (VFR, ferry flight, etc.);

(12) route and route segments with checkpoints/waypoints, distances, time and tracks;

(13) planned cruising speed and flying times between check-points/waypoints (estimated and actual times overhead);

(14) safe altitudes and minimum levels;

(15) planned altitudes and flight levels;

(16) fuel calculations (records of in-flight fuel checks);

(17) fuel on board when starting engines;

(18) alternate(s) for destination and, where applicable, take-off and en-route;

(19) initial ATS flight plan clearance and subsequent reclearance;

(20) in-flight replanning calculations; and

(21) relevant meteorological information.

NCC.OP.153 Destination aerodromes — instrument approach operations

The pilot-in-command shall ensure that sufficient means are available to navigate and land at the destination aerodrome or at any destination alternate aerodrome in the case of loss of capability for the intended approach and landing operation.

AMC1 NCC.OP.153 Destination aerodromes — instrument approach operations

(a) When the operator intends to use PBN, the operator should either:

(1) demonstrate that the GNSS is robust against loss of capability; or

(2) select an aerodrome as a destination alternate aerodrome only if an IAP that does not rely on a GNSS is available either at that aerodrome or at the destination aerodrome.

GNSS ROBUSTNESS AGAINST LOSS OF CAPABILITY — HELICOPTERS

(b) The operator may demonstrate robustness against the loss of capability of the GNSS if all of the following criteria are met:

(1) At flight planning stage, SBAS or GBAS are expected to be available and used.

(2) The failure of a single receiver or system should not compromise the navigation capability required for the intended instrument approach.

(3) The temporary jamming of all GNSS frequencies should not compromise the navigation capability for the intended route. The operator should provide a procedure to deal with such cases unless other sensors are available to continue on the intended route.

(4) The duration of a jamming event should be determined as follows:

(i) Considering the average speed and height of a helicopter flight, the duration of a jamming event may be considered to be less than 2 minutes.

(ii) The time needed for the GNSS system to re-start and provide the aircraft position and navigation guidance should also be considered.

(iii) Based on (i) and (ii) above, the operator should establish the duration of the loss of GNSS navigation data due to jamming. This duration should be no less than 3 minutes, and may be no longer than 4 minutes.

(5) The operator should ensure resilience to jamming for the duration determined in (4) above, as follows:

(i) the altitude of obstacles on both sides of the flight path are higher than the planned altitude for a given segment of the flight, the operator should ensure that there is no excessive drift on either side by relying on navigation sensors such as a inertial systems with performance in accordance with the intended function.

(ii) If (i) does not apply and the operator cannot rely on sensors other than GNSS, the operator should develop a procedure to ensure that a drift from the intended route during the jamming event has no adverse consequences on the safety of the flight. This procedure may involve air traffic services.

(6) The operator should ensure that no space weather event is predicted to disrupt GNSS reliability and integrity at both the destination and the alternate aerodromes.

(7) The operator should verify the availability of RAIM for all phases of flight based on GNSS, including navigation to the alternate aerodromes.

(8) The operator’s MEL should reflect the elements in points (b)(1) and (b)(2).

OPERATIONAL CREDITS

(c) To comply with point NCC.OP.153, when the operator intends to use 'operational credits' (e.g. EFVS, SA CAT I, etc.), the operator should select an aerodrome as destination alternate aerodrome only if an approach procedure that does not rely on the same 'operational credit' is available either at that aerodrome or at the destination aerodrome.

GM1 NCC.OP.153 Destination aerodromes — instrument approach operations

INTENT OF AMC1

(a) The limitation applies only to destination alternate aerodromes for flights when a destination alternate aerodrome is required. A take-off or en route alternate aerodrome with instrument approach procedures relying on GNSS may be planned without restrictions. A destination aerodrome with all instrument approach procedures relying solely on GNSS may be used without a destination alternate aerodrome if the conditions for a flight without a destination alternate aerodrome are met.

(b) The term 'available' means that the procedure can be used in the planning stage and complies with planning minima requirements.

GM2 NCC.OP.153 Destination aerodromes — instrument approach operations

GNSS ROBUSTNESS AGAINST LOSS OF CAPABILITY — HELICOPTERS

(a) Redundancy of on-board systems ensures that no single on-board equipment failure (e.g. antenna, GNSS receiver, FMS, or navigation display failure) results in the loss of the GNSS capability.

(b) Any shadowing of the GNSS signal or jamming of all GNSS frequencies from the ground is expected to be of a very short duration and affect a very small area. Additional sensors or functions such as inertial coasting may be used during jamming events. Jamming should be considered on all segments of the intended route, including the approach.

(c) The availability of GNSS signals can be compromised if space weather events cause 'loss of lock' conditions and more than one satellite signal may be lost on a given GNSS frequency. Until space weather forecasts are available, the operator may use 'nowcasts' as short-term predictions for helicopter flights of short duration.

(d) SBAS also contributes to the mitigation of space weather effects, both by providing integrity messages and by correcting ionosphere-induced errors.

(e) Even though SBAS should be available and used, RAIM should remain available autonomously. In case of loss of the SBAS, the route and the approach to the destination or alternate aerodromes should still be flown with an available RAIM function.

(f) When available, GNSS based on more than one constellation and more than one frequency may provide better integrity and redundancy regarding failures in the space segment of GNSS, jamming, and resilience to space weather events.

AMC1 NCC.OP.155 Refuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES — AEROPLANE

(a) If passengers are on board when refuelling with:

(1) other than aviation gasoline (AVGAS); or

(2) wide-cut type fuel; or

(3) a mixture of these types of fuel,

ground servicing activities and work inside the aeroplane, such as catering and cleaning, should be conducted in such a manner that they do not create a hazard and allow emergency evacuation to take place through those aisles and exits intended for emergency evacuation.

(b) The deployment of integral aircraft stairs or the opening of emergency exits as a prerequisite to refuelling is not necessarily required.

(c) Operational procedures should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

(1) one qualified person should remain at a specified location during fuelling operations with passengers on board. This qualified person should be capable of handling emergency procedures concerning fire protection and fire-fighting, handling communications and initiating and directing an evacuation;

(2) two-way communication should be established and should remain available by the aeroplane's inter-communication system or other suitable means between the ground crew supervising the refuelling and the qualified personnel on board the aeroplane; the involved personnel should remain within easy reach of the system of communication;

(3) crew members, personnel and passengers should be warned that refuelling will take place;

(4) 'fasten seat belts' signs should be off;

(5) 'no smoking' signs should be on, together with interior lighting to enable emergency exits to be identified;

(6) passengers should be instructed to unfasten their seat belts and refrain from smoking;

(7) the minimum required number of cabin crew should be on board and be prepared for an immediate emergency evacuation;

(8) if the presence of fuel vapour is detected inside the aeroplane, or any other hazard arises during refuelling, fuelling should be stopped immediately;

(9) the ground area beneath the exits intended for emergency evacuation and slide deployment areas, if applicable, should be kept clear at doors where stairs are not in position for use in the event of evacuation; and

(10) provision should be made for a safe and rapid evacuation.

AMC2 NCC.OP.155 Refuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES — HELICOPTERS

When the helicopter rotors are stopped, the efficiency and speed of passengers disembarking from and re-embarking on board helicopters is such that disembarking before refuelling and re-embarking after refuelling is the general practice. However, if such operations are needed, the operator should refer to AMC1 NCC.OP.157 and AMC2 NCC.OP.157. Operational procedures to be described in the operations manual (OM) should specify that at least the relevant precautions of the aforementioned AMC are taken.

AMC1 NCC.OP.157 Refuelling with engine(s) running and/or rotors turning — helicopters

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES — NO PASSENGERS ON BOARD

Operational procedures in the OM should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

(a) all necessary information should be exchanged in advance with the aerodrome operator, operating-site operator, and refuelling operator;

(b) the procedures to be used by crew members should be defined

(c) the procedures to be used by the operator's ground operations personnel that may be in charge of refuelling or assisting in emergency evacuations should be described;

(d) the operator's training programmes for crew members and for the operator's ground operations personnel should be described;

(e) the minimum distance between the helicopter turning parts and the refuelling vehicle or installations should be defined when the refuelling takes place outside an aerodrome or at an aerodrome where there are no such limitations;

(f) besides any rescue and firefighting services (RFFSs) that are required to be available by aerodrome regulations, an additional handheld fire extinguisher with the equivalent of 5 kg of dry powder should be immediately available and ready for use;

(g) a means for a two-way communication between the crew and the person in charge of refuelling should be defined and established;

(h) if fuel vapour is detected inside the helicopter, or any other hazard arises, refuelling/defuelling should be stopped immediately;

(i) one pilot should stay at the controls, constantly monitor the refuelling, and be ready to shut off the engines and evacuate at all times; and

(j) any additional precautions should be taken, as determined by the risk assessment.

GM1 NCC.OP.155 Refuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

AIRCRAFT REFUELLING PROVISIONS AND GUIDANCE ON SAFE REFUELLING PRACTICES

Provisions concerning aircraft refuelling are contained in Volume I (Aerodrome Design and Operations) of ICAO Annex 14 (Aerodromes), and guidance on safe refuelling practices is contained in Parts 1 and 8 of the ICAO Airport Services Manual (Doc 9137).

AMC2 NCC.OP.157 Refuelling with the engine(s) running and/or rotors turning — helicopters

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES — PASSENGERS ON BOARD

In addition to AMC1 NCC.OP.157, for refuelling with passengers on board, operational procedures in the OM should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

(a) the positioning of the helicopter and the corresponding helicopter evacuation strategy should be defined taking into account the wind as well as the refuelling facilities or vehicles;

(b) on a heliport, the ground area beneath the exits that are intended for emergency evacuation should be kept clear;

(c) an additional passenger briefing as well as instructions should be defined, and the 'No smoking' signs should be on unless 'No smoking' placards are installed;

(d) interior lighting should be set to enable identification of emergency exits;

(e) the use of doors during refuelling should be defined: doors on the refuelling side should remain closed, while doors on the opposite side should remain unlocked or, weather permitting, open, unless otherwise specified in the AFM;

(f) at least one suitable person capable of implementing emergency procedures for firefighting, communications, as well as for initiating and directing an evacuation, should remain at a specified location; this person should not be the qualified pilot at the controls or the person performing the refuelling; and

(g) unless passengers are regularly trained in emergency evacuation procedures, an additional crew member or ground crew member should be assigned to assist in the rapid evacuation of the passengers.

GM1 NCC.OP.157 Refuelling with the engine(s) and/or rotors turning — helicopters

RISK ASSESSMENT

The risk assessment should explain why it is not practical to refuel with the engine(s) and rotors stopped, identify any additional hazards, and describe how the additional risks are controlled. Helicopter offshore operations (HOFO) are typical operations where the benefits should outweigh the risks if mitigation measures are taken.

Guidance on safe refuelling practices is contained in ICAO Doc 9137 Airport Services Manual, Parts 1 and 8.

The operator's risk assessment may include, but not be limited to, the following risks, hazards and mitigation measures:

(a) risk related to refuelling with rotors turning;

(b) risk related to the shutting down of the engines, including the risk of failures during start-up;

(c) environmental conditions, such as wind limitations, displacement of exhaust gases, and blade sailing;

(d) risk related to human factors and fatigue management, especially for single-pilot operations for long periods of time;

(e) risk mitigation, such as the safety features of the fuel installation, rescue and firefighting (RFF) capability, number of personnel members available, ease of emergency evacuation of the helicopter, etc.;

(f) assessment of the use of radio transmitting equipment;

(g) determination of the use of passenger seat belts;

(h) review of the portable electronic device (PED) policy; and

(i) if passengers are to disembark, consideration of their disembarking before rather than after the refuelling; and

(j) if passengers are to embark, consideration of their embarking after rather than before the refuelling.

AMC1 NCC.OP.165 Carriage of passengers

SEATS THAT PERMIT DIRECT ACCESS TO EMERGENCY EXITS

Passengers who occupy seats that permit direct access to emergency exits should appear to be reasonably fit, strong and able to assist the rapid evacuation of the aircraft in an emergency after an appropriate briefing by the crew.

GM1 NCC.OP.165 Carriage of passengers

MEANING OF DIRECT ACCESS

'Direct access' means a seat from which a passenger can proceed directly to the exit without entering an aisle or passing around an obstruction.

AMC1 NCC.OP.180 Meteorological conditions

EVALUATION OF METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS

Pilots should carefully evaluate the available meteorological information relevant to the proposed flight, such as applicable surface observations, winds and temperatures aloft, terminal and area forecasts, air meteorological information reports (AIRMETs), significant meteorological information (SIGMET) and pilot reports. The ultimate decision whether, when, and where to make the flight rests with the pilot-in-command. Pilots should continue to re-evaluate changing weather conditions.

GM1 NCC.OP.180 Meteorological conditions

CONTINUATION OF A FLIGHT

In the case of in-flight re-planning, continuation of a flight refers to the point from which a revised flight plan applies.

GM1 NCC.OP.185 Ice and other contaminants — ground procedures

TERMINOLOGY

Terms used in the context of de-icing/anti-icing have the meaning defined in the following subparagraphs.

(a) ‘Anti-icing’: the process of protecting the aircraft to prevent contamination due to existing or expected weather, typically by applying anti-icing fluids on uncontaminated aircraft surfaces.

(b) ‘Anti-icing fluid’ includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(1) Typically, Type II, III or IV fluid (neat or diluted), normally applied unheated (*);

(2) Type I fluid/water mixture heated to minimum 60°C at the nozzle.

(*) When de-icing and anti-icing in a one-step process, Type II and Type IV fluids are typically applied diluted and heated.

(c) ‘Clear ice’: a coating of ice, generally clear and smooth, but with some air pockets. It forms on exposed objects, the temperatures of which are at, below or slightly above the freezing temperature, by the freezing of super-cooled drizzle, droplets or raindrops. Clear ice is very difficult to be detected visually.

(d) ‘Cold soaked surface frost (CSSF)’: frost developed on cold soaked aircraft surfaces by sublimation of air humidity. This effect can take place at ambient temperatures above 0 °C. Cold soaked aircraft surfaces are more common on aircraft that have recently landed. External surfaces of fuel tanks (e.g. wing skins) are typical areas of CSSF formation (known in this case as cold soaked fuel frost (CSFF)), due to the thermal inertia of very cold fuel that remains on the tanks after landing.

(e) ‘Conditions conducive to aircraft icing on the ground’: freezing fog, freezing precipitation, frost, rain or high humidity (on cold soaked wings), hail, ice pellets, snow or mixed rain and snow.

(f) ‘Contamination’: all forms of frozen or semi-frozen deposits on an aircraft, such as frost, snow, slush or ice.

(g) ‘Contamination check’: a check of the aircraft for contamination to establish the need for de-icing.

(h) ‘De-icing’: the process of eliminating frozen contamination from aircraft surfaces, typically by applying de-icing fluids.

(i) ‘De-icing fluid’: such fluid includes, but is not limited to, the following: (1) Heated water; (2) Preferably, Type I fluid (neat or diluted (typically)); (3) Type II, III or IV fluid (neat or diluted). The de-icing fluid is normally applied heated to ensure maximum efficiency and its freezing point should be at the outside air temperature (OAT) or below.

(j) ‘De-icing/anti-icing’: this is the combination of de-icing and anti-icing performed in either one or two steps.

(k) ‘Ground ice detection system (GIDS)’: a system used during aircraft ground operations to inform the personnel involved in the operation and/or the flight crew about the presence of frost, ice, snow or slush on the aircraft surfaces.

(l) ‘Holdover time (HOT)’: the period of time during which an anti-icing fluid provides protection against frozen contamination to the treated aircraft surfaces. It depends among other variables, on the type and intensity of the precipitation, OAT, wind, the particular fluid (or fluid Type) and aircraft design and aircraft configuration during the treatment.

(m) ‘Liquid water equivalent (LWE) system’: an automated weather measurement system that determines the LWE precipitation rate in conditions of frozen or freezing precipitation. The system provides flight crew with continuously updated information on the fluid protection capability under varying weather conditions.

(n) ‘Lowest operational use temperature (LOUT)’: the lowest temperature at which a fluid has been tested and certified as acceptable in accordance with the appropriate aerodynamic acceptance test whilst still maintaining a freezing point buffer of not less than: (1) 10°C for a Type I fluid; or (2) 7°C for Type II, III or IV fluids.

(o) ‘Post-treatment check’, ‘Post- de-icing check’ or ‘Post- de-icing/anti-icing check’: an external check of the aircraft after de-icing and/or anti-icing treatment accomplished by qualified staff and from suitably elevated observation points (e.g. from the de-icing/anti-icing equipment itself or other elevated equipment) to ensure that the aircraft is free from frost, ice, snow, or slush.

(p) ‘Pre-take-off check’: The flight crew should continuously monitor the weather conditions after the de-icing/anti-icing treatment to assess whether the applied holdover time is still appropriate. Within the aircraft’s HOT and prior to take-off, the flight crew should check the aircraft’s wings or representative aircraft surfaces for frozen contaminants.

(q) ‘Pre-take-off contamination check’: a check of the treated surfaces for contamination, performed when the HOT has been exceeded or if any doubt exists regarding the continued effectiveness of the applied anti-icing treatment. It is normally accomplished externally, just before commencement of the take-off run.

ANTI-ICING CODES

(r) Upon completion of the anti-icing treatment, a qualified staff provides the anti-icing code to the flight crew as follows: ‘the fluid Type/the fluid name (except for Type I)/concentration (except for Type I)/local time at start of anti-icing/date (optional)/the statement ‘post- de-icing/anti-icing check completed’ (if check completed). Example: ‘TYPE II / MANUFACTURER, BRAND X / 75% / 1335 / 15FEB20 / POST- DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING CHECK COMPLETED’.

(s) When a two-step de-icing/anti-icing operation has been carried out, the anti-icing code should be determined by the second step fluid.

GM2 NCC.OP.185 Ice and other contaminants — ground procedures

DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING — PROCEDURES

(a) De-icing and/or anti-icing procedures should take into account manufacturer’s recommendations, including those that are type-specific, and should cover:

(1) contamination checks, including detection of clear ice and under-wing frost; limits on the thickness/area of contamination published in the AFM or other manufacturers’ documentation should be followed;

(2) procedures to be followed if de-icing and/or anti-icing procedures are interrupted or unsuccessful;

(3) post-treatment checks;

(4) pre-take-off checks;

(5) pre-take-off contamination checks;

(6) the recording of any incidents relating to de-icing and/or anti-icing; and

(7) the responsibilities of all personnel involved in de-icing and/or anti-icing.

(b) The operator’s procedures should ensure the following:

(1) When aircraft surfaces are contaminated by ice, frost, slush or snow, they are de-iced prior to take-off, according to the prevailing conditions. Removal of contaminants may be performed with mechanical tools, fluids (including hot water), infrared heat or forced air, taking account of aircraft type-specific provisions.

(2) Account is taken of the wing skin temperature versus OAT, as this may affect:

(i) the need to carry out aircraft de-icing and/or anti-icing; and/or

(ii) the performance of the de-icing/anti-icing fluids.

(3) When freezing precipitation occurs or there is a risk of freezing precipitation occurring that would contaminate the surfaces at the time of take-off, aircraft surfaces should be anti-iced. Anti-icing fluids (neat or diluted) should not be applied at OAT below their LOUT. If both de-icing and anti-icing are required, the procedure may be performed in a one- or two-step process, depending upon weather conditions, available equipment, available fluids and the desired HOT. One-step de-icing/anti-icing means that de-icing and anti-icing are carried out at the same time, using a mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water. Two-step de-icing/anti-icing means that de-icing and anti-icing are carried out in two separate steps. The aircraft is first de-iced using heated water only or a heated mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water. After completion of the de-icing operation, a layer of a mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water, or of de-icing /anti-icing fluid only, is sprayed over the aircraft surfaces. The second step will be taken before the first step fluid freezes (typically within 3 minutes but severe conditions may shorten this) and, if necessary, area by area.

(4) When an aircraft is anti-iced and a longer HOT is needed/desired, the use of a less diluted fluid should be considered.

(5) All restrictions relative to OAT and fluid application (including, but not necessarily limited to, temperature and pressure) published by the fluid manufacturer and/or aircraft manufacturer, are followed and procedures, limitations and recommendations to prevent the formation of fluid residues are followed.

(6) During conditions conducive to aircraft icing on the ground or after de-icing and/or anti-icing, an aircraft is not dispatched for departure unless it has been given a contamination check or a post-treatment check by a trained and qualified person. This check should cover all treated surfaces of the aircraft and be performed from points offering sufficient visibility to these parts. To ensure that there is no clear ice on suspect areas, it may be necessary to make a physical check (e.g. tactile).

(7) The required entry is made in the technical log.

(8) The pilot-in-command continually monitors the environmental situation after the performed treatment. Prior to take-off he/she performs a pre-take-off check, which is an assessment of whether the applied HOT is still appropriate. This pre-take-off check includes, but is not limited to, factors such as precipitation, wind and OAT.

(9) If any doubt exists as to whether a deposit may adversely affect the aircraft's performance and/or controllability characteristics, the pilot-in-command should arrange for a re-treatment or a pre-take-off contamination check to be performed in order to verify that the aircraft's surfaces are free of contamination. Special methods and/or equipment may be necessary to perform this check, especially at night time or in extremely adverse weather conditions. If this check cannot be performed just before take-off, re-treatment should be applied.

(10) When retreatment is necessary, any residue of the previous treatment should be removed, and a completely new de-icing/anti-icing treatment should be applied.

(11) When a ground ice detection system (GIDS) is used to perform an aircraft surfaces check prior to and/or after a treatment, the use of GIDS by suitably trained personnel should be part of the procedure.

(c) Special operational considerations

(1) When using thickened de-icing/anti-icing fluids, the operator should consider a two-step de-icing/anti-icing procedure, the first step preferably with hot water and/or un-thickened fluids.

(2) The use of de-icing/anti-icing fluids should be in accordance with the aircraft manufacturer's documentation. This is particularly important for thickened fluids to assure sufficient flow-off during take-off. Avoid applying excessive thickened fluid on the horizontal tail of aircraft with unpowered elevator controls.

(3) The operator should comply with any type-specific operational requirement(s), such as an aircraft mass decrease and/or a take-off speed increase associated with a fluid application.

(4) The operator should take into account any flight handling procedures (stick force, rotation speed and rate, take-off speed, aircraft attitude, etc.) laid down by the aircraft manufacturer when associated with a fluid application.

(5) The limitations or handling procedures resulting from (c)(3) and/or (c)(4) should be part of the flight crew pre-take-off briefing.

(d) Communications

(1) Before aircraft treatment. When the aircraft is to be treated with the flight crew on board, the flight and personnel involved in the operation should confirm the fluid to be used, the extent of treatment required and any aircraft type-specific procedure(s) to be used. Any other information needed to apply the HOT tables should be exchanged.

(2) Anti-icing code. The operator's procedures should include an anti-icing code, which indicates the treatment the aircraft has received. This code provides the flight crew with the minimum details necessary to estimate an HOT and confirms that the aircraft is free of contamination.

(3) After treatment. Before reconfiguring or moving the aircraft, the flight crew should receive a confirmation from the personnel involved in the operation that all de-icing and/or anti-icing operations are complete and that all personnel and equipment are clear of the aircraft.

(e) Hold-over protection & LWE systems

The operator should publish in the operations manual, when required, the HOTs in the form of a table or a diagram, to account for the various types of ground icing conditions and the different types and concentrations of fluids used. However, the times of protection shown in these tables are to be used as guidelines only and are normally used in conjunction with the pre-take-off check.

An operator may choose to operate using LWE systems instead of HOT tables whenever the required means for using these systems are in place.

(f) Training

The operator's initial and recurrent de-icing training programmes (including communication training) for flight crew and for other personnel involved in de-icing operations should include additional training if any of the following is introduced:

(1) a new method, procedure and/or technique;

(2) a new type of fluid and/or equipment; or

(3) a new type of aircraft.

(g) Contracting

When the operator contracts training on de-icing/anti-icing functions, the operator should ensure that the contractor complies with the operator's training/qualification procedures, together with any specific procedures in respect of:

(1) roles and responsibilities;

(2) de-icing and/or anti-icing methods and procedures;

(3) fluids to be used, including precautions for storage, preparation for use and chemical incompatibilities;

(4) specific aircraft provisions (e.g. no-spray areas, propeller/engine de-icing, APU operation etc.);

(5) different checks to be conducted; and

(6) procedures for communications with flight crew and any other third party involved.

(h) Special maintenance considerations

(1) General

The operator should take proper account of the possible side effects of fluid use. Such effects may include, but are not necessarily limited to, dried and/or re-hydrated residues, corrosion and the removal of lubricants.

(2) Special considerations regarding residues of dried fluids

The operator should establish procedures to prevent or detect and remove residues of dried fluid. If necessary, the operator should establish appropriate inspection intervals based on the recommendations of the airframe manufacturers and/or the operator's own experience:

(i) Dried fluid residues

Dried fluid residues could occur when surfaces have been treated and the aircraft has not subsequently been flown and has not been subject to precipitation. The fluid may then have dried on the surfaces.

(ii) Re-hydrated fluid residues

Repetitive application of thickened de-icing/anti-icing fluids may lead to the subsequent formation/build-up of a dried residue in aerodynamically quiet areas, such as cavities and gaps. This residue may re-hydrate if exposed to high humidity conditions, precipitation, washing, etc., and increase to many times its original size/volume. This residue will freeze if exposed to conditions at or below 0 °C. This may cause moving parts, such as elevators, ailerons, and flap actuating mechanisms to stiffen or jam in-flight. Re-hydrated residues may also form on exterior surfaces, which can reduce lift, increase drag and stall speed. Re-hydrated residues may also collect inside control surface structures and cause clogging of drain holes or imbalances to flight controls. Residues may also collect in hidden areas, such as around flight control hinges, pulleys, grommets, on cables and in gaps.

(iii) Operators are strongly recommended to obtain information about the fluid dry-out and re-hydration characteristics from the fluid manufacturers and to select products with optimised characteristics.

(iv) Additional information should be obtained from fluid manufacturers for handling, storage, application and testing of their products.

GM3 NCC.OP.185 Ice and other contaminants — ground procedures

DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING — BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Further guidance material on this issue is given in the ICAO Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations (Doc 9640).

(a) General

(1) Any deposit of frost, ice, snow or slush on the external surfaces of an aircraft may drastically affect its flying qualities because of reduced aerodynamic lift, increased drag, modified stability and control characteristics. Furthermore, freezing deposits may cause moving parts, such as elevators, ailerons, flap actuating mechanism, etc., to jam and create a potentially hazardous condition. Propeller/engine/APU/systems performance may deteriorate due to the presence of frozen contaminants on blades, intakes and components. Also, engine operation may be seriously affected by the ingestion of snow or ice, thereby causing engine stall or compressor damage. In addition, ice/frost may form on certain external surfaces (e.g. wing upper and lower surfaces, etc.) due to the effects of cold fuel/structures, even in ambient temperatures well above 0 °C.

(2) Procedures established by the operator for de-icing and/or anti-icing are intended to ensure that the aircraft is clear of contamination so that degradation of aerodynamic characteristics or mechanical interference will not occur and, following anti-icing, to maintain the airframe in that condition during the appropriate HOT.

(3) Under certain meteorological conditions, de-icing and/or anti-icing procedures may be ineffective in providing sufficient protection for continued operations. Examples of these conditions are freezing rain, ice pellets and hail snow exceeding certain intensities, high wind velocity, and fast-dropping OAT. No HOT guidelines exist for these conditions.

(4) Material for establishing operational procedures can be found, for example, in:

(i) ICAO Annex 3 'Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation';

(ii) ICAO 'Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations';

(iii) SAE AS6285 'Aircraft Ground Deicing/Anti-Icing Processes';

(iv) SAE AS6286 'Aircraft Ground Deicing/Anti-Icing Training and Qualification Program';

(v) SAE AS6332 'Aircraft Ground Deicing/Anti-icing Quality Management';

(vi) SAE ARP6257 'Aircraft Ground De/Anti-Icing Communication Phraseology for Flight and Ground Crews';

(vii) FAA Holdover Time Guidelines

(viii) FAA 8900.xxx series Notice 'Revised FAA-Approved Deicing Program Updates, Winter 20xx-20yy'.

(b) Fluids

(1) Type I fluid: Due to its properties, Type I fluid forms a thin, liquid-wetting film on surfaces to which it is applied which, under certain weather conditions, gives a very limited HOT. For anti-icing purposes the fluid/water mixture should have a freezing point of at least 10 °C below OATincreasing the concentration of fluid in the fluid/water mix does not provide any extension in HOT.;

(2) Type II and Type IV fluids contain thickeners which enable the fluid to form a thicker liquid-wetting film on surfaces to which it is applied. Generally, this fluid provides a longer HOT than Type I fluids in similar conditions.

(3) Type III fluid is a thickened fluid especially intended for use on aircraft with low rotation speeds.

(4) Fluids used for de-icing and/or anti-icing should be acceptable to the operator and the aircraft manufacturer. These fluids normally conform to specifications such as SAE AMS1424 (Type I) or SAE AMS1428 (Types II, III and IV). Use of non-conforming fluids is not recommended due to their characteristics being unknown. The anti-icing and aerodynamic properties of thickened fluids may be seriously degraded by, for example, inappropriate storage, treatment, application, application equipment, age and in case they are applied on top of non-chemically compatible de-icing fluids.

(c) Hold-over protection

(1) Hold-over protection is achieved by a layer of anti-icing fluid remaining on and protecting aircraft surfaces for a period of time. With a one-step de-icing/anti-icing procedure, the HOT begins at the commencement of de-icing/anti-icing. With a two-step procedure, the HOT begins at the commencement of the second (anti-icing) step. The hold-over protection runs out:

(i) at the commencement of the take-off roll (due to aerodynamic shedding of fluid); or

(ii) when frozen deposits start to form or accumulate on treated aircraft surfaces, thereby indicating the loss of effectiveness of the fluid.

(2) The duration of hold-over protection may vary depending on the influence of factors other than those specified in the HOT tables. Guidance should be provided by the operator to take account of such factors, which may include:

(i) atmospheric conditions, e.g. exact type and rate of precipitation, wind direction and velocity, relative humidity and solar radiation; and

(ii) the aircraft and its surroundings, such as aircraft component inclination angle, contour and surface roughness, surface temperature, operation in close proximity to other aircraft (jet or propeller blast) and ground equipment and structures.

(3) HOTs are not meant to imply that flight is safe in the prevailing conditions if the specified HOT has not been exceeded. Certain meteorological conditions, such as freezing drizzle or freezing rain, may be beyond the certification envelope of the aircraft.

AMC1 NCC.OP.190 Ice and other contaminants — flight procedures

FLIGHT IN EXPECTED OR ACTUAL ICING CONDITIONS

(a) The procedures to be established by the operator should take account of the design, the equipment, the configuration of the aircraft and the necessary training. For these reasons, different aircraft types operated by the same company may require the development of different procedures. In every case, the relevant limitations are those that are defined in the AFM and other documents produced by the manufacturer.

(b) The operator should ensure that the procedures take account of the following:

(1) the equipment and instruments that should be serviceable for flight in icing conditions;

(2) the limitations on flight in icing conditions for each phase of flight. These limitations may be imposed by the aircraft's de-icing or anti-icing equipment or the necessary performance corrections that have to be made;

(3) the criteria the flight crew should use to assess the effect of icing on the performance and/or controllability of the aircraft;

(4) the means by which the flight crew detects, by visual cues or the use of the aircraft's ice detection system, that the flight is entering icing conditions; and

(5) the action to be taken by the flight crew in a deteriorating situation (which may develop rapidly) resulting in an adverse effect on the performance and/or controllability of the aircraft, due to:

(i) the failure of the aircraft's anti-icing or de-icing equipment to control a build-up of ice; and/or

(ii) ice build-up on unprotected areas.

(c) Training for dispatch and flight in expected or actual icing conditions. The content of the operations manual should reflect the training, both conversion and recurrent, that flight crew, cabin crew and all other relevant operational personnel require in order to comply with the procedures for dispatch and flight in icing conditions:

(1) For the flight crew, the training should include:

(i) instruction on how to recognise, from weather reports or forecasts that are available before flight commences or during flight, the risks of encountering icing conditions along the planned route and on how to modify, as necessary, the departure and in-flight routes or profiles;

(ii) instruction on the operational and performance limitations or margins;

(iii) the use of in-flight ice detection, anti-icing and de-icing systems in both normal and abnormal operation; and

(iv) instruction on the differing intensities and forms of ice accretion and the consequent action which should be taken.

(2) For the cabin crew, the training should include:

(i) awareness of the conditions likely to produce surface contamination; and

(ii) the need to inform the flight crew of significant ice accretion.

GM1 NCC.OP.205 In-flight fuel management

(b) The commander should advise ATC of a minimum fuel state by declaring MINIMUM FUEL when, having committed to land at a specific landing site, the pilot calculates that any change to the existing clearance to that landing site, or other air traffic delays may result in landing with the planned final reserve fuel.

(c) The commander should declare a situation of fuel emergency by broadcasting MAYDAY MAYDAY MAYDAY, when the useable fuel estimated to be made available upon landing at the nearest landing site, where a safe landing can be made is less than the required final reserve fuel.

GM1 NCC.OP.205(b)&(d) Fuel/energy scheme — in-flight fuel/energy management policy

FINAL RESERVE FUEL PROTECTION

To ensure a safe landing, the pilot needs to protect the FRF in accordance with point NCC.OP.131(c)(3). The objective of the FRF protection is to ensure that a safe landing is made at any aerodrome or operating site when unforeseen circumstances may not allow to safely complete the flight, as originally planned.

When the FRF can no longer be protected, then a fuel emergency needs to be declared, as per point NCC.OP.205(d), and any landing option explored (e.g. for aeroplanes, aerodromes not assessed by the operator, military aerodromes, closed runways), including deviating from rules, operational procedures, and methods in the interest of safety (as per point CAT.GEN.MPA.105(b)).

ICAO Doc 9976 Flight Planning and Fuel Management (FPFM) Manual and the EASA Fuel Manual contain further detailed guidance on the development of a comprehensive in-flight fuel management policy and related procedures.

For helicopters, the operating site may be different from the planned destination or alternate aerodrome.

GM1 NCC.OP.205(c) Fuel/energy scheme — in-flight fuel/energy management policy

‘MINIMUM FUEL’ DECLARATION

The ‘MINIMUM FUEL’ declaration informs the ATC that all planned landing options have been reduced to a specific aerodrome or operating site of intended landing, and for helicopters, that no other landing site is available. It also informs the ATC that any change to the existing clearance may result in landing with less than the planned FRF. This is not an emergency situation but an indication that an emergency situation is possible, should any additional delay occur.

The pilot should not expect any form of priority handling as a result of a ‘MINIMUM FUEL’ declaration. However, the ATC should advise the flight crew of any additional expected delays, as well as coordinate with other ATC units when transferring the control of the aircraft, to ensure that the other ATC units are aware of the flight’s fuel state.

ICAO Doc 9976 Flight Planning and Fuel Management *(FPFM)* Manual (1st Edition, 2015) and the EASA *Fuel Manual* contain guidance on declaring ‘MINIMUM FUEL’.

GM1 NCC.OP.215 Ground proximity detection

GUIDANCE MATERIAL FOR TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS) FLIGHT CREW TRAINING PROGRAMMES

(a) Introduction

(1) This GM contains performance-based training objectives for TAWS flight crew training.

(2) The training objectives cover five areas: theory of operation; pre-flight operations; general in-flight operations; response to TAWS cautions; response to TAWS warnings.

(3) The term ‘TAWS’ in this GM means a ground proximity warning system (GPWS) enhanced by a forward-looking terrain avoidance function. Alerts include both cautions and warnings.

(4) The content of this GM is intended to assist operators who are producing training programmes. The information it contains has not been tailored to any specific aircraft or TAWS equipment, but highlights features that are typically available where such systems are installed. It is the responsibility of the individual operator to determine the applicability of the content of this Guidance Material to each aircraft and TAWS equipment installed and their operation. Operators should refer to the AFM and/or aircraft/flight crew operating manual (A/FCOM), or similar documents, for information applicable to specific configurations. If there should be any conflict between the content of this Guidance Material and that published in the other documents described above, then the information contained in the AFM or A/FCOM will take precedence.

(b) Scope

(1) The scope of this GM is designed to identify training objectives in the areas of: academic training; manoeuvre training; initial evaluation; recurrent qualification. Under each of these four areas, the training material has been separated into those items that are considered essential training items and those that are considered to be desirable. In each area, objectives and acceptable performance criteria are defined.

(2) No attempt is made to define how the training programme should be implemented. Instead, objectives are established to define the knowledge that a pilot operating a TAWS is expected to possess and the performance expected from a pilot who has completed TAWS training. However, the guidelines do indicate those areas in which the pilot receiving the training should demonstrate his/her understanding, or performance, using a real time interactive training device, i.e. a flight simulator. Where appropriate, notes are included within the performance criteria that amplify or clarify the material addressed by the training objective.

(c) Performance-based training objectives

(1) TAWS academic training

(i) This training is typically conducted in a classroom environment. The knowledge demonstrations specified in this section may be completed through the successful completion of written tests or by providing correct responses to non-real-time computer-based training (CBT) questions.

(ii) Theory of operation. The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of TAWS operation and the criteria used for issuing cautions and warnings. This training should address system operation. Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of how a TAWS functions. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the following functions:

(A) Surveillance

(a) The GPWS computer processes data supplied from an air data computer, a radio altimeter, an instrument landing system (ILS)/microwave landing system (MLS)/multi-mode (MM) receiver, a roll attitude sensor, and actual position of the surfaces and of the landing gear.

(b) The forward-looking terrain avoidance function utilises an accurate source of known aircraft position, such as that which may be provided by a flight management system (FMS) or global positioning system (GPS), or an electronic terrain database. The source and scope of the terrain, obstacle and airport data, and features such as the terrain clearance floor, the runway picker, and geometric altitude (where provided), should all be described.

(c) Displays required to deliver TAWS outputs include a loudspeaker for voice announcements, visual alerts (typically amber and red lights) and a terrain awareness display (that may be combined with other displays). In addition, means should be provided for indicating the status of the TAWS and any partial or total failures that may occur.

(B) Terrain avoidance. Outputs from the TAWS computer provide visual and audio synthetic voice cautions and warnings to alert the flight crew about potential conflicts with terrain and obstacles.

(C) Alert thresholds. Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing cautions and warnings. Criteria: the pilot should be able to demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by a TAWS to issue cautions and alerts and the general criteria for the issuance of these alerts, including:

(a) basic GPWS alerting modes specified in the ICAO standard:

Mode 1: excessive sink rate;

Mode 2: excessive terrain closure rate;

Mode 3: descent after take-off or missed approach; Mode 4: unsafe proximity to terrain; and

Mode 5: descent below ILS glide slope (caution only);

(b) an additional, optional alert mode:

Mode 6: radio altitude call-out (information only); and

(c) TAWS cautions and warnings that alert the flight crew to obstacles and terrain ahead of the aircraft in line with or adjacent to its projected flight path (forward-looking terrain avoidance (FLTA) and premature descent alert (PDA) functions).

(D) TAWS limitations. Objective: to verify that the pilot is aware of the limitations of TAWS. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate knowledge and an understanding of TAWS limitations identified by the manufacturer for the equipment model installed, such as:

(a) navigation should not be predicated on the use of the terrain display;

(b) unless geometric altitude data is provided, use of predictive TAWS functions is prohibited when altimeter subscale settings display 'QFE' (atmospheric pressure at aerodrome elevation/runway threshold);

(c) nuisance alerts can be issued if the aerodrome of intended landing is not included in the TAWS airport database;

(d) in cold weather operations, corrective procedures should be implemented by the pilot unless the TAWS has in-built compensation, such as geometric altitude data;

(e) loss of input data to the TAWS computer could result in partial or total loss of functionality. Where means exist to inform the flight crew thatfunctionality has been degraded, this should be known and the consequences understood;

(f) radio signals not associated with the intended flight profile (e.g. ILS glide path transmissions from an adjacent runway) may cause false alerts;

(g) inaccurate or low accuracy aircraft position data could lead to false or non-annunciation of terrain or obstacles ahead of the aircraft; and

(h) minimum equipment list (MEL) restrictions should be applied in the event of the TAWS becoming partially or completely unserviceable. (It should be noted that basic GPWS has no forward-looking capability.)

(E) TAWS inhibits. Objective: to verify that the pilot is aware of the conditions under which certain functions of a TAWS are inhibited. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate knowledge and an understanding of the various TAWS inhibits, including the following means of:

(a) silencing voice alerts;

(b) inhibiting ILS glide path signals (as may be required when executing an ILS back beam approach);

(c) inhibiting flap position sensors (as may be required when executing an approach with the flaps not in a normal position for landing);

(d) inhibiting the FLTA and PDA functions; and

(e) selecting or deselecting the display of terrain information, together with appropriate annunciation of the status of each selection.

(2) Operating procedures. The pilot should demonstrate the knowledge required to operate TAWS avionics and to interpret the information presented by a TAWS. This training should address the following topics:

(i) Use of controls. Objective: to verify that the pilot can properly operate all TAWS controls and inhibits. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the proper use of controls, including the following means by which:

(A) before flight, any equipment self-test functions can be initiated;

(B) TAWS information can be selected for display; and

(C) all TAWS inhibits can be operated and what the consequent annunciations mean with regard to loss of functionality.

(ii) Display interpretation. Objective: to verify that the pilot understands the meaning of all information that can be annunciated or displayed by a TAWS. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the ability to properly interpret information annunciated or displayed by a TAWS, including the following:

(A) knowledge of all visual and aural indications that may be seen or heard;

(B) response required on receipt of a caution;

(C) response required on receipt of a warning; and

(D) response required on receipt of a notification that partial or total failure of the TAWS has occurred (including annunciation that the present aircraft position is of low accuracy).

(iii) Use of basic GPWS or use of the FLTA function only. Objective: to verify that the pilot understands what functionality will remain following loss of the GPWS or of the FLTA function. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate knowledge of how to recognise the following:

(A) un-commanded loss of the GPWS function, or how to isolate this function and how to recognise the level of the remaining controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) protection (essentially, this is the FLTA function); and

(B) un-commanded loss of the FLTA function, or how to isolate this function and how to recognise the level of the remaining CFIT protection (essentially, this is the basic GPWS).

(iv) Crew coordination. Objective: to verify that the pilot adequately briefs other flight crew members on how TAWS alerts will be handled. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate that the pre-flight briefing addresses procedures that will be used in preparation for responding to TAWS cautions and warnings, including the following:

(A) the action to be taken, and by whom, in the event that a TAWS caution and/or warning is issued; and

(B) how multi-function displays will be used to depict TAWS information at take-off, in the cruise and for the descent, approach, landing (and any missed approach). This will be in accordance with procedures specified by the operator, who will recognise that it may be more desirable that other data is displayed at certain phases of flight and that the terrain display has an automatic 'pop-up' mode in the event that an alert is issued.

(v) Reporting rules. Objective: to verify that the pilot is aware of the rules for reporting alerts to the controller and other authorities. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate knowledge of the following:

(A) when, following recovery from a TAWS alert or caution, a transmission of information should be made to the appropriate ATC unit; and

(B) the type of written report that is required, how it is to be compiled and whether any cross-reference should be made in the aircraft technical log and/or voyage report (in accordance with procedures specified by the operator), following a flight in which the aircraft flight path has been modified in response to a TAWS alert, or if any part of the equipment appears not to have functioned correctly.

(vi) Alert thresholds. Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing cautions and warnings. Criteria: the pilot should be able to demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by a TAWS to issue cautions and warnings and the general criteria for the issuance of these alerts, including awareness of the following:

(A) modes associated with basic GPWS, including the input data associated with each; and

(B) visual and aural annunciations that can be issued by TAWS and how to identify which are cautions and which are warnings.

(3) TAWS manoeuvre training. The pilot should demonstrate the knowledge required to respond correctly to TAWS cautions and warnings. This training should address the following topics:

(i) Response to cautions:

(A) Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to cautions. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the need, without delay:

(a) to initiate action required to correct the condition that has caused the TAWS to issue the caution and to be prepared to respond to a warning, if this should follow; and

(b) if a warning does not follow the caution, to notify the controller of the new position, heading and/or altitude/flight level of the aircraft, and what the pilot-in-command intends to do next.

(B) The correct response to a caution might require the pilot to:

(a) reduce a rate of descent and/or to initiate a climb;

(b) regain an ILS glide path from below, or to inhibit a glide path signal if an ILS is not being flown;

(c) select more flap, or to inhibit a flap sensor if the landing is being conducted with the intent that the normal flap setting will not be used;

(d) select gear down; and/or

(e) initiate a turn away from the terrain or obstacle ahead and towards an area free of such obstructions if a forward-looking terrain display indicates that this would be a good solution and the entire manoeuvre can be carried out in clear visual conditions.

(ii) Response to warnings. Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to warnings. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the following:

(A) The need, without delay, to initiate a climb in the manner specified by the operator.

(B) The need, without delay, to maintain the climb until visual verification can be made that the aircraft will clear the terrain or obstacle ahead or until above the appropriate sector safe altitude (if certain about the location of the aircraft with respect to terrain) even if the TAWS warning stops. If, subsequently, the aircraft climbs up through the sector safe altitude, but the visibility does not allow the flight crew to confirm that the terrain hazard has ended, checks should be made to verify the location of the aircraft and to confirm that the altimeter subscale settings are correct.

(C) When workload permits, that the flight crew should notify the air traffic controller of the new position and altitude/flight level and what the pilot-in-command intends to do next.

(D) That the manner in which the climb is made should reflect the type of aircraft and the method specified by the aircraft manufacturer (which should be reflected in the operations manual) for performing the escape manoeuvre. Essential aspects will include the need for an increase in pitch attitude, selection of maximum thrust, confirmation that external sources of drag (e.g. spoilers/speed brakes) are retracted and respect of the stick shaker or other indication of eroded stall margin.

(E) That TAWS warnings should never be ignored. However, the pilot's response may be limited to that which is appropriate for a caution, only if:

(a) the aircraft is being operated by day in clear, visual conditions; and

(b) it is immediately clear to the pilot that the aircraft is in no danger in respect of its configuration, proximity to terrain or current flight path.

(4) TAWS initial evaluation:

(i) The flight crew member's understanding of the academic training items should be assessed by means of a written test.

(ii) The flight crew member's understanding of the manoeuvre training items should be assessed in a flight simulation training device (FSTD) equipped with TAWS visual and aural displays and inhibit selectors similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft that the pilot will fly. The results should be assessed by a flight simulation training instructor, synthetic flight examiner, type rating instructor or type rating examiner.

(iii) The range of scenarios should be designed to give confidence that proper and timely responses to TAWS cautions and warnings will result in the aircraft avoiding a CFIT accident. To achieve this objective, the pilot should demonstrate taking the correct action to prevent a caution developing into a warning and, separately, the escape manoeuvre needed in response to a warning. These demonstrations should take place when the external visibility is zero, though there is much to be learnt if, initially, the training is given in 'mountainous' or 'hilly' terrain with clear visibility. This training should comprise a sequence of scenarios, rather than be included in line orientated flight training (LOFT).

(iv) A record should be made, after the pilot has demonstrated competence, of the scenarios that were practised.

(5) TAWS recurrent training:

(i) TAWS recurrent training ensures that pilots maintain the appropriate TAWS knowledge and skills. In particular, it reminds pilots of the need to act promptly in response to cautions and warnings and of the unusual attitude associated with flying the escape manoeuvre.

(ii) An essential item of recurrent training is the discussion of any significant issues and operational concerns that have been identified by the operator. Recurrent training should also address changes to TAWS logic, parameters or procedures and to any unique TAWS characteristics of which pilots should be aware.

(6) Reporting procedures:

(i) Verbal reports. Verbal reports should be made promptly to the appropriate ATC unit:

(A) whenever any manoeuvre has caused the aircraft to deviate from an air traffic clearance;

(B) when, following a manoeuvre that has caused the aircraft to deviate from an air traffic clearance, the aircraft has returned to a flight path that complies with the clearance; and/or

(C) when an air traffic control unit issues instructions that, if followed, would cause the pilot to manoeuvre the aircraft towards terrain or obstacle or it would appear from the display that a potential CFIT occurrence is likely to result.

(ii) Written reports. Written reports should be submitted in accordance with the operator's occurrence reporting scheme and they also should be recorded in the aircraft technical log:

(A) whenever the aircraft flight path has been modified in response to a TAWS alert (false, nuisance or genuine);

(B) whenever a TAWS alert has been issued and is believed to have been false; and/or

(C) if it is believed that a TAWS alert should have been issued, but was not.

(iii) Within this GM, and with regard to reports:

(A) the term 'false' means that the TAWS issued an alert that could not possibly be justified by the position of the aircraft in respect to terrain and it is probable that a fault or failure in the system (equipment and/or input data) was the cause;

(B) the term 'nuisance' means that the TAWS issued an alert that was appropriate, but was not needed because the flight crew could determine by independent means that the flight path was, at that time, safe;

(C) the term 'genuine' means that the TAWS issued an alert that was both appropriate and necessary;

(D) the report terms described in (c)(6)(iii) are only meant to be assessed after the occurrence is over, to facilitate subsequent analysis, the adequacy of the equipment and the programmes it contains. The intention is not for the flight crew to attempt to classify an alert into any of these three categories when visual and/or aural cautions or warnings are annunciated.

GM1 NCC.OP.220 Airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS)

GENERAL

(a) The ACAS operational procedures and training programmes established by the operator should take into account this Guidance Material. It incorporates advice contained in:

(1) ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV;

(2) ICAO Doc 8168 (PANS-OPS), Volume III; and

(3) ICAO PANS-ATM.

(b) Additional guidance material on ACAS may be referred to, including information available from such sources as EUROCONTROL.

ACAS FLIGHT CREW TRAINING

(c) During the implementation of ACAS, several operational issues were identified that had been attributed to deficiencies in flight crew training programmes. As a result, the issue of flight crew training has been discussed within the ICAO, which has developed guidelines for operators to use when designing training programmes.

(d) This Guidance Material contains performance-based training objectives for ACAS II flight crew training. Information contained here related to traffic advisories (TAs) is also applicable to ACAS I and ACAS II users. The training objectives cover five areas: theory of operation; pre-flight operations; general in-flight operations; response to TAs; and response to resolution advisories (RAs).

(e) The information provided is valid for version 7 and 7.1 (ACAS II). Where differences arise, these are identified.

(f) The performance-based training objectives are further divided into the areas of: academic training; manoeuvre training; initial evaluation and recurrent qualification. Under each of these four areas, the training material has been separated into those items which are considered essential training items and those which are considered desirable. In each area, objectives and acceptable performance criteria are defined.

(g) ACAS academic training

(1) This training is typically conducted in a classroom environment. The knowledge demonstrations specified in this section may be completed through the successful completion of written tests or through providing correct responses to non-real-time computer-based training (CBT) questions.

(2) Essential items

(i) Theory of operation. The flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of ACAS II operation and the criteria used for issuing TAs and RAs. This training should address the following topics.

(A) System operation

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of how ACAS functions.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the following functions:

(a) Surveillance

(1) ACAS interrogates other transponder-equipped aircraft within a nominal range of 14 NM.

(2) ACAS surveillance range can be reduced in geographic areas with a large number of ground interrogators and/or ACAS II-equipped aircraft.

(3) If the operator's ACAS implementation provides for the use of the Mode S extended squitter, the normal surveillance range may be increased beyond the nominal 14 NM. However, this information is not used for collision avoidance purposes.

(b) Collision avoidance

(1) TAs can be issued against any transponder-equipped aircraft that responds to the ICAO Mode C interrogations, even if the aircraft does not have altitude reporting capability.

(2) RAs can be issued only against aircraft that are reporting altitude and in the vertical plane only.

(3) RAs issued against an ACAS-equipped intruder are co-ordinated to ensure complementary RAs are issued.

(4) Failure to respond to an RA deprives own aircraft of the collision protection provided by own ACAS.

(5) Additionally, in ACAS-ACAS encounters, failure to respond to an RA also restricts the choices available to the other aircraft's ACAS and thus renders the other aircraft's ACAS less effective than if own aircraft were not ACAS equipped.

(B) Advisory thresholds

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing TAs and RAs.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by ACAS to issue TAs and RAs and the general criteria for the issuance of these advisories, including the following:

(a) ACAS advisories are based on time to closest point of approach (CPA) rather than distance. The time should be short and vertical separation should be small, or projected to be small, before an advisory can be issued. The separation standards provided by ATS are different from the miss distances against which ACAS issues alerts.

(b) Thresholds for issuing a TA or an RA vary with altitude. The thresholds are larger at higher altitudes.

(c) A TA occurs from 15 to 48 seconds and an RA from 15 to 35 seconds before the projected CPA.

(d) RAs are chosen to provide the desired vertical miss distance at CPA. As a result, RAs can instruct a climb or descent through the intruder aircraft's altitude.

(C) ACAS limitations

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the limitations of ACAS.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge and understanding of ACAS limitations, including the following:

(a) ACAS will neither track nor display non-transponder-equipped aircraft, nor aircraft not responding to ACAS Mode C interrogations.

(b) ACAS will automatically fail if the input from the aircraft’s barometric altimeter, radio altimeter or transponder is lost.

(1) In some installations, the loss of information from other on board systems such as an inertial reference system (IRS) or attitude

heading reference system (AHRS) may result in an ACAS failure. Individual operators should ensure that their flight crews are aware of the types of failure which will result in an ACAS failure.

(2) ACAS may react in an improper manner when false altitude information is provided to own ACAS or transmitted by another aircraft. Individual operators should ensure that their flight crew are aware of the types of unsafe conditions which can arise. Flight crew members should ensure that when they are advised, if their own aircraft is transmitting false altitude reports, an alternative altitude reporting source is selected, or altitude reporting is switched off.

(c) Some aeroplanes within 380 ft above ground level (AGL) (nominal value) are deemed to be ‘on ground’ and will not be displayed. If ACAS is able to determine an aircraft below this altitude is airborne, it will be displayed.

(d) ACAS may not display all proximate transponder-equipped aircraft in areas of high density traffic.

(e) The bearing displayed by ACAS is not sufficiently accurate to support the initiation of horizontal manoeuvres based solely on the traffic display.

(f) ACAS will neither track nor display intruders with a vertical speed in excess of 10 000 ft/min. In addition, the design implementation may result in some short-term errors in the tracked vertical speed of an intruder during periods of high vertical acceleration by the intruder.

(g) Ground proximity warning systems/ground collision avoidance systems (GPWSs/GCASs) warnings and wind shear warnings take precedence over ACAS advisories. When either a GPWS/GCAS or wind shear warning is active, ACAS aural annunciations will be inhibited and ACAS will automatically switch to the 'TA only' mode of operation.

(D) ACAS inhibits

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the conditions under which certain functions of ACAS are inhibited.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the various ACAS inhibits, including the following:

(a) ‘Increase Descent’ RAs are inhibited below 1 450 ft AGL.

(b) ‘Descend’ RAs are inhibited below 1 100 ft AGL.

(c) All RAs are inhibited below 1 000 ft AGL.

(d) All TA aural annunciations are inhibited below 500 ft AGL.

(e) Altitude and configuration under which ‘Climb’ and ‘Increase Climb’ RAs are inhibited. ACAS can still issue ‘Climb’ and ‘Increase Climb’ RAs when operating at the aeroplane's certified ceiling. (In some aircraft types, ‘Climb’ or ‘Increase Climb’ RAs are never inhibited.)

(ii) Operating procedures

The flight crew member should demonstrate the knowledge required to operate the ACAS avionics and interpret the information presented by ACAS. This training should address the following:

(A) Use of controls

Objective: to verify that the pilot can properly operate all ACAS and display controls.

Criteria: demonstrate the proper use of controls, including the following:

(a) Aircraft configuration required to initiate a self-test.

(b) Steps required to initiate a self-test.

(c) Recognising when the self-test was successful and when it was unsuccessful. When the self-test is unsuccessful, recognising the reason for the failure and, if possible, correcting the problem.

(d) Recommended usage of range selection. Low ranges are used in the terminal area and the higher display ranges are used in the en-route environment and in the transition between the terminal and en-route environment.

(e) Recognising that the configuration of the display does not affect the ACAS surveillance volume.

(f) Selection of lower ranges when an advisory is issued, to increase display resolution.

(g) Proper configuration to display the appropriate ACAS information without eliminating the display of other needed information.

(h) If available, recommended usage of the above/below mode selector. The above mode should be used during climb and the below mode should be used during descent.

(i) If available, proper selection of the display of absolute or relative altitude and the limitations of using this display if a barometric correction is not provided to ACAS.

(B) Display interpretation

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member understands the meaning of all information that can be displayed by ACAS. The wide variety of display implementations require the tailoring of some criteria. When the training programme is developed, these criteria should be expanded to cover details for the operator's specific display implementation.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the ability to properly interpret information displayed by ACAS, including the following:

(a) Other traffic, i.e. traffic within the selected display range that is not proximate traffic, or causing a TA or RA to be issued.

(b) Proximate traffic, i.e. traffic that is within 6 NM and ± 1 200 ft.

(c) Non-altitude reporting traffic.

(d) No bearing TAs and RAs.

(e) Off-scale TAs and RAs: the selected range should be changed to ensure that all available information on the intruder is displayed.

(f) TAs: the minimum available display range that allows the traffic to be displayed should be selected, to provide the maximum display resolution.

(g) RAs (traffic display): the minimum available display range of the traffic display that allows the traffic to be displayed should be selected, to provide the maximum display resolution.

(h) RAs (RA display): flight crew members should demonstrate knowledge of the meaning of the red and green areas or the meaning of pitch or flight path angle cues displayed on the RA display. Flight crew members should also demonstrate an understanding of the RA display limitations, i.e. if a vertical speed tape is used and the range of the tape is less than 2 500 ft/min, an increase rate RA cannot be properly displayed.

(i) If appropriate, awareness that navigation displays oriented on 'Track-Up' may require a flight crew member to make a mental adjustment for drift angle when assessing the bearing of proximate traffic.

(C) Use of the TA only mode

Objective: to verify that a flight crew member understands the appropriate times to select the TA only mode of operation and the limitations associated with using this mode.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the following:

(a) Knowledge of the operator's guidance for the use of TA only.

(b) Reasons for using this mode. If TA only is not selected when an airport is conducting simultaneous operations from parallel runways separated by less than 1 200 ft, and to some intersecting runways, RAs can be expected. If, for any reason, TA only is not selected and an RA is received in these situations, the response should comply with the operator's approved procedures.

(c) All TA aural annunciations are inhibited below 500 ft AGL. As a result, TAs issued below 500 ft AGL may not be noticed unless the TA display is included in the routine instrument scan.

(D) Crew coordination

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member understands how ACAS advisories will be handled.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge of the crew procedures that should be used when responding to TAs and RAs, including the following:

(a) task sharing between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring;

(b) expected call-outs; and

(c) communications with ATC.

(E) Phraseology rules

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the rules for reporting RAs to the controller.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the following:

(a) the use of the phraseology contained in ICAO PANS-OPS;

(b) an understanding of the procedures contained in ICAO PANS-ATM and ICAO Annex 2; and

(c) the understanding that verbal reports should be made promptly to the appropriate ATC unit:

(1) whenever any manoeuvre has caused the aeroplane to deviate from an air traffic clearance;

(2) when, subsequent to a manoeuvre that has caused the aeroplane to deviate from an air traffic clearance, the aeroplane has returned to a flight path that complies with the clearance; and/or

(3) when air traffic issue instructions that, if followed, would cause the crew to manoeuvre the aircraft contrary to an RA with which they are complying.

(F) Reporting rules

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the rules for reporting RAs to the operator.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge of where information can be obtained regarding the need for making written reports to various States when an RA is issued. Various States have different reporting rules and the material available to the flight crew member should be tailored to the operator's operating environment. This responsibility is satisfied by the flight crew member reporting to the operator according to the applicable reporting rules.

(3) Non-essential items: advisory thresholds

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing TAs and RAs.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by ACAS to issue TAs and RAs and the general criteria for the issuance of these advisories, including the following:

(i) The minimum and maximum altitudes below/above which TAs will not be issued.

(ii) When the vertical separation at CPA is projected to be less than the ACAS-desired separation, a corrective RA that requires a change to the existing vertical speed will be issued. This separation varies from 300 ft at low altitude to a maximum of 700 ft at high altitude.

(iii) When the vertical separation at CPA is projected to be just outside the ACAS-desired separation, a preventive RA that does not require a change to the existing vertical speed will be issued. This separation varies from 600 to 800 ft.

(iv) RA fixed range thresholds vary between 0.2 and 1.1 NM.

(h) ACAS manoeuvre training

(1) Demonstration of the flight crew member's ability to use ACAS displayed information to properly respond to TAs and RAs should be carried out in a full flight simulator equipped with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft. If a full flight simulator is utilised, crew resource management (CRM) should be practised during this training.

(2) Alternatively, the required demonstrations can be carried out by means of an interactive CBT with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft. This interactive CBT should depict scenarios in which real-time responses should be made. The flight crew member should be informed whether or not the responses made were correct. If the response was incorrect or inappropriate, the CBT should show what the correct response should be.

(3) The scenarios included in the manoeuvre training should include: corrective RAs; initial preventive RAs; maintain rate RAs; altitude crossing RAs; increase rate RAs; RA reversals; weakening RAs; and multi-aircraft encounters. The consequences of failure to respond correctly should be demonstrated by reference to actual incidents such as those publicised in EUROCONTROL ACAS II Bulletins (available on the EUROCONTROL website).

(i) TA responses

Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to TAs. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the following:

(A) Proper division of responsibilities between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring. The pilot flying should fly the aircraft using any type-specific procedures and be prepared to respond to any RA that might follow. For aircraft without an RA pitch display, the pilot flying should consider the likely magnitude of an appropriate pitch change. The pilot monitoring should provide updates on the traffic location shown on the ACAS display, using this information to help visually acquire the intruder.

(B) Proper interpretation of the displayed information. Flight crew members should confirm that the aircraft they have visually acquired is that which has caused the TA to be issued. Use should be made of all information shown on the display, note being taken of the bearing and range of the intruder (amber circle), whether it is above or below (data tag), and its vertical speed direction (trend arrow).

(C) Other available information should be used to assist in visual acquisition, including ATC 'party-line' information, traffic flow in use, etc.

(D) Because of the limitations described, the pilot flying should not manoeuvre the aircraft based solely on the information shown on the ACAS display. No attempt should be made to adjust the current flight path in anticipation of what an RA would advise, except that if own aircraft is approaching its cleared level at a high vertical rate with a TA present, vertical rate should be reduced to less than 1 500 ft/min.

(E) When visual acquisition is attained, and as long as no RA is received, normal right of way rules should be used to maintain or attain safe separation. No unnecessary manoeuvres should be initiated. The limitations of making manoeuvres based solely on visual acquisition, especially at high altitude or at night, or without a definite horizon should be demonstrated as being understood.

(ii) RA responses

Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to RAs. Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the following:

(A) Proper response to the RA, even if it is in conflict with an ATC instruction and even if the pilot believes that there is no threat present.

(B) Proper task sharing between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring. The pilot flying should respond to a corrective RA with appropriate control inputs. The pilot monitoring should monitor the response to the RA and should provide updates on the traffic location by checking the traffic display. Proper CRM should be used.

(C) Proper interpretation of the displayed information. The pilot should recognise the intruder causing the RA to be issued (red square on display). The pilot should respond appropriately.

(D) For corrective RAs, the response should be initiated in the proper direction within 5 seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ¼ g (gravitational acceleration of 9.81 m/sec^2).

(E) Recognition of the initially displayed RA being modified. Response to the modified RA should be properly accomplished, as follows:

(a) For increase rate RAs, the vertical speed change should be started within 2½ seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ⅓ g.

(b) For RA reversals, the vertical speed reversal should be started within 2½ seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ⅓ g.

(c) For RA weakenings, the vertical speed should be modified to initiate a return towards the original clearance.

(d) An acceleration of approximately ¼ g will be achieved if the change in pitch attitude corresponding to a change in vertical speed of 1 500 ft/min is accomplished in approximately 5 seconds, and of ⅓ g if the change is accomplished in approximately 3 seconds. The change in pitch attitude required to establish a rate of climb or descent of 1 500 ft/min from level flight will be approximately 6^0 when the true airspeed (TAS) is 150 kt, 4^0 at 250 kt, and 2^0 at 500 kt. (These angles are derived from the formula: 1 000 divided by TAS.).

(F) Recognition of altitude crossing encounters and the proper response to these RAs.

(G) For preventive RAs, the vertical speed needle or pitch attitude indication should remain outside the red area on the RA display.

(H) For maintain rate RAs, the vertical speed should not be reduced. Pilots should recognise that a maintain rate RA may result in crossing through the intruder's altitude.

(I) When the RA weakens, or when the green 'fly to' indicator changes position, the pilot should initiate a return towards the original clearance, and when 'clear of conflict' is annunciated, the pilot should complete the return to the original clearance.

(J) The controller should be informed of the RA as soon as time and workload permit, using the standard phraseology.

(K) When possible, an ATC clearance should be complied with while responding to an RA. For example, if the aircraft can level at the assigned altitude while responding to RA (an 'adjust vertical speed' RA (version 7) or 'level off' (version 7.1)), it should be done; the horizontal (turn) element of an ATC instruction should be followed.

(L) Knowledge of the ACAS multi-aircraft logic and its limitations, and that ACAS can optimise separations from two aircraft by climbing or descending towards one of them. For example, ACAS only considers intruders that it considers to be a threat when selecting an RA. As such, it is possible for ACAS to issue an RA against one intruder that results in a manoeuvre towards another intruder that is not classified as a threat. If the second intruder becomes a threat, the RA will be modified to provide separation from that intruder.

(i) ACAS initial evaluation

(1) The flight crew member's understanding of the academic training items should be assessed by means of a written test or interactive CBT that records correct and incorrect responses to phrased questions.

(2) The flight crew member's understanding of the manoeuvre training items should be assessed in a full flight simulator equipped with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft the flight crew member will fly, and the results assessed by a qualified instructor, inspector, or check airman. The range of scenarios should include: corrective RAs; initial preventive RAs; maintain rate RAs; altitude crossing RAs; increase rate RAs; RA reversals; weakening RAs; and multi-threat encounters. The scenarios should also include demonstrations of the consequences of not responding to RAs, slow or late responses, and manoeuvring opposite to the direction called for by the displayed RA.

(3) Alternatively, exposure to these scenarios can be conducted by means of an interactive CBT with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft the pilot will fly. This interactive CBT should depict scenarios in which real-time responses should be made and a record made of whether or not each response was correct.

(j) ACAS recurrent training

(1) ACAS recurrent training ensures that flight crew members maintain the appropriate ACAS knowledge and skills. ACAS recurrent training should be integrated into and/or conducted in conjunction with other established recurrent training programmes. An essential item of recurrent training is the discussion of any significant issues and operational concerns that have been identified by the operator. Recurrent training should also address changes to ACAS logic, parameters or procedures and to any unique ACAS characteristics which flight crew members should be made aware of.

(2) It is recommended that operator's recurrent training programmes using full flight simulators include encounters with conflicting traffic when these simulators are equipped

with ACAS. The full range of likely scenarios may be spread over a 2 year period. If a full flight simulator, as described above, is not available, use should be made of an interactive CBT that is capable of presenting scenarios to which pilot responses should be made in real-time.

AMC1 NCC.OP.225 Approach and landing conditions

LANDING DISTANCE ASSESSMENT

(a) The in-flight landing distance assessment should be based on the latest available weather report and runway condition report (RCR).

(b) The assessment should be initially carried out when the weather report and the RCR are obtained, usually around top of descent. If the planned duration of the flight does not allow to carry out the assessment in non-critical phases of flight, the assessment should be carried out before departure.

(c) When meteorological conditions may lead to a degradation of the runway surface condition, the assessment should include consideration of how much deterioration in runway surface friction characteristics may be tolerated, so that a quick decision can be made prior to landing.

(d) The flight crew should monitor the evolution of the actual conditions during the approach, to ensure that they do not degrade below the condition that was previously determined to be the minimum acceptable.

(e) The in-flight determination of the landing distance should be done is such way that either:

 (1) the landing distance available (LDA) on the intended runway is at least 115 % of the landing distance at the estimated time of landing, determined in accordance with the performance information for the assessment of the landing distance at time of arrival (LDTA); or

 (2) if performance information for the assessment of the LDTA is not available, the LDA on the intended runway at the estimated time of landing is at least the landing distance determined at the time of dispatch.

(f) If performance information for the assessment of the LDTA is available, it should be based on approved data contained in the AFM, or on other data that is either determined in accordance with the applicable certification standards for aeroplanes or determined by the CAAT.

(g) Whenever the runway braking action encountered during the landing roll is not as good as reported by the aerodrome operator in the RCR, the pilot-in-command should notify the air traffic services (ATS) by means of a special air-report (AIREP) as soon as practicable.

GM1 NCC.OP.225 Approach and landing conditions — aeroplanes

LANDING DISTANCE

The assessment of the LDTA begins with the acquisition of the latest available weather information and the RCR. The information provided in the RCR is divided in two sections:

(a) The ‘aircraft performance’ section which contains information that is directly relevant in a performance computation.

(b) The ‘situational awareness’ section which contains information that the flight crew should be aware of for a safe operation, but which does not have a direct impact on the performance assessment.

The ‘aircraft performance’ section of the RCR includes a runway condition code (RWYCC), the contaminant type, depth and coverage for each third of the runway.

The determination of the RWYCC is based on the use of the runway condition assessment matrix (RCAM); however, the presentation of the information in the RCAM is appropriate for use by aerodrome personnel trained and competent in assessing the runway condition in a way that is relevant to aircraft performance.

It is the task of the aerodrome personnel to report the appropriate RWYCC in order to allow the flight crew to assess the landing performance characteristics of the runway in use. When no RWYCC is available in winter conditions, the RCAM provides the flight crew with a combination of the relevant information (runway surface conditions: state and/or contaminant or pilot report of braking action (AIREP)) in order to determine the RWYCC.

Table 1 below is an excerpt of the RCAM and permits to carry out the primary assessment based on the reported contaminant type and depth, as well as on the OAT.

Table 1: Association between the runway surface condition and the RWYCC based on the reported contaminant type and depth and on the OAT

Runway surface condition	Surface condition descriptor	Depth	Notes	RWYCC
Dry		n/a		6
Wet	Damp (any visible dampness)	3 mm or less	Including wet and contaminated runways below 25 % coverage in each runway third	5
	wet			
Slippery wet				3
Contaminated	Compacted snow	Any	At or below OAT – 15 °C [3]	4
			Above OAT – 15 °C [3]	3
	Dry snow	3 mm or less		5
		More than 3 mm up to 100 mm	Including when any depth occurs on top of compacted snow	3
		Any	On top of ice	0[2]
	Frost[1]	Any		5
	Ice	Any	In cold and dry conditions	1
	Slush	3 mm or less		5
		More than 3 mm up to 15 mm		2
	Standing water	3 mm or less		5
		More than 3 mm up to 15 mm		2
		Any	On top of ice	0[2]
	Wet ice	Any		0[2]
	Wet snow	3 mm or less		5
		More than 3 mm up to 30 mm	Including when any depth occurs on top of compacted snow	3
		Any	On top of ice	0[2]

Note 1: Under certain conditions, frost may cause the surface to become very slippery.

Note 2: Operations in conditions where less-than-poor braking action prevails are prohibited.

Note 3: The runway surface temperature should preferably be used where available.

A primary assessment may have to be downgraded by the aerodrome operator based on an AIREP of lower braking action than the one typically associated with the type and depth of contaminant on the runway.

Upgrading a RWYCC 5, 4, 3 or 2 determined by the aerodrome operator from the observed contaminant type is not allowed.

A RWYCC 1 or 0 maybe be upgraded by the aerodrome operator to a maximum of RWYCC 3. The reason for the upgrade will be specified in the 'situational awareness' section of the RCR.

When the aerodrome operator is approved for operations on specially prepared winter runways, the RWYCC of a runway that is contaminated with compacted snow or ice, may be upgraded to RWYCC 4 depending upon a specific treatment of the runway. In such cases, the reason for the upgrade will be specified in the 'situational awareness' section of the RCR.

GM2 NCC.OP.225 Approach and landing conditions — aeroplanes

RCR, RWYCC and RCAM

Further guidance regarding a detailed description of the RCR format and content, the RWYCC and the RCAM may be found in the following documents:

(a) ICAO Doc 9981 'PANS Aerodromes';

(b) ICAO Doc 4444 'PANS ATM';

(c) ICAO Doc 10064 'Aeroplane Performance Manual'; and (d) ICAO Circular 355 'Assessment, Measurement and Reporting of Runway Surface Conditions'.

GM3 NCC.OP.225 Approach and landing conditions — aeroplanes

PERFORMANCE INFORMATION FOR THE ASSESSMENT OF LDTA

Guidance on performance information for the assessment of the LDTA may be found in:

(a) AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.303(e) of the AMC & GM toTCAR OPS Part CAT; and

(b) ICAO Doc 10064 'Aeroplane Performance Manual'.

GM4 NCC.OP.225 Approach and landing conditions — aeroplanes

REPORTING ON RUNWAY BRAKING ACTION

The role of the flight crew in the runway surface condition reporting process does not end once a safe landing has been achieved. While the aerodrome operator is responsible for generating the RCR, flight crew are responsible for providing accurate braking action reports.

The flight crew braking action reports provide feedback to the aerodrome operator regarding the accuracy of the RCR resulting from the observed runway surface conditions.

ATC passes these braking action reports to the aerodrome operator, which in turn uses them in conjunction with the RCAM to determine if it is necessary to downgrade or upgrade the Runway Condition Code (RWYCC).

During busy times, runway inspections and maintenance may be less frequent and need to be sequenced with arrivals. Therefore, aerodrome operators may depend on braking action reports to confirm that the runway surface condition is not deteriorating below the assigned RCR.

Since both the ATC and the aerodrome operator rely on accurate braking action reports, flight crew should use standardised terminology in accordance with ICAO Doc 4444 'PANS ATM'.

The following Table 1 shows the correlation between the terminology to be used in the AIREP to report the braking action and the RWYCC.

Table 1: Association between AIREP and RWYCC

AIREP (braking action)	Description	RWYCC
N/A		6
GOOD	Braking deceleration is normal for the wheel braking effort applied AND directional control is normal.	5
GOOD TO MEDIUM	Braking deceleration OR directional control is between good and medium.	4
MEDIUM	Braking deceleration is noticeably reduced for the wheel braking effort applied OR directional control is noticeably reduced.	3
MEDIUM TO POOR	Braking deceleration OR directional control is between medium and poor.	2
POOR	Braking deceleration is significantly reduced for the wheel braking effort applied OR directional control is significantly reduced.	1
LESS THAN POOR	Braking deceleration is minimal to non-existent for the wheel braking effort applied OR directional control is uncertain.	0

An AIREP should be transmitted to the ATC, in accordance with one of the following specifications, as applicable:

(a) Good braking action is reported as 'BRAKING ACTION GOOD'.

(b) Good to medium braking action is reported as 'BRAKING ACTION GOOD TO MEDIUM'.

(c) Medium braking action is reported as 'BRAKING ACTION MEDIUM'.

(d) Medium to poor braking action is reported as 'BRAKING ACTION MEDIUM TO POOR'.

(e) Poor braking action is reported as 'BRAKING ACTION POOR'.

(f) Less than poor braking action is reported as 'BRAKING ACTION LESS THAN POOR'.

In some cases, the differences between two consecutive levels of the six braking action categories between 'Good' and 'Less than Poor' may be too subtle for the flight crew to detect. It is therefore acceptable for the flight crew to report on a more coarse scale of 'Good', 'Medium' and 'Poor'.

Whenever requested by ATC, or if the braking action encountered during the landing roll is not as previously reported by the aerodrome operator in the RCR, pilots should provide a braking action report. This is especially important and safety relevant where the experienced braking action is worse than the braking action associated with any RWYCC code currently in effect for the portion of the runway concerned.

When the braking action experienced during landing is better than that reported by the aerodrome operator, it is also relevant to report this information, which may trigger further actions for the aerodrome operator in order to update the RCR.

If an aircraft-generated braking action report is available, it should be transmitted, identifying its origin accordingly. If the flight crew have a reason to modify the aircraft-generated braking action report based on their judgement, the commander should be able to amend such report.

A braking action AIREP of 'Less than Poor' leads to a runway closure until the aerodrome operator can improve the runway condition.

An air safety report should be submitted whenever flight safety has been endangered due to low braking action.

GM5 NCC.OP.225 Approach and landing conditions — aeroplanes

FLIGHT CREW TRAINING

Flight crew should be trained on the use of the RCR, on the use of performance data for the assessment of the LDTA, if available, and on reporting braking action using the AIREP format.

Guidance on the development of the content of the training may be found in:

(a) AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.303 & CAT.OP.MPA.311 of the AMC & GM to TCAR OPS Part CAT, as applicable to the intended operations;

(b) ICAO Doc 10064 'Aeroplane Performance Manual'; and

(c) ICAO Circular 355 'Assessment, Measurement and Reporting of Runway Surface Conditions'.

AMC1 NCC.OP.226 Approach and landing conditions — helicopters

FATO SUITABILITY

The inflight determination of the final approach and takelatest available meteorological report.

AMC1 NCC.OP.230(a) Commencement and continuation of approach

MINIMUM RVR FOR CONTINUATION OF APPROACH — AEROPLANES

(a) The touchdown RVR should be the controlling RVR.

(b) If the touchdown RVR is not reported, then the midpoint RVR should be the controlling RVR.

(c) Where the RVR is not available, CMV should be used, except for the purpose of continuation of an approach in LVO in accordance with AMC8 NCC.OP.110.

GM1 NCC.OP.230 Commencement and continuation of approach

APPLICATION OF RVR OR VIS REPORTS — AEROPLANES

(a) There is no prohibition on the commencement of an approach based on the reported RVR or VIS. The restriction in NCC.OP.230 applies only if the RVR or VIS is reported and applies to the continuation of the approach past a point where the aircraft is 1 000 ft above the aerodrome elevation or in the FAS, as applicable.

APPLICATION OF RVR OR VIS REPORTS — HELICOPTERS

(b) There is no prohibition on the commencement of an approach based on the reported RVR. The restriction in NCC.OP.230 applies to the continuation of the approach past a point where the aircraft is 1 000 ft above the aerodrome elevation or in the FAS, as applicable.

The prohibition to continue the approach applies only if the RVR is reported and is below 550 m and is below the operating minima. There is no prohibition based on VIS.

(c) If the reported RVR is 550 m or greater, but it is less than the RVR calculated in accordance with AMC5 CAT.OP.MPA.110, a go-around is likely to be necessary since visual reference may not be established at the DH or MDH. Similarly, in the absence of an RVR report, the reported visibility or a digital image may indicate that a go-around is likely. The pilot-in-command should consider available options, based on a thorough assessment of risk, such as diverting to an alternate aerodromes, before commencing the approach.

APPLICATION OF RVR OR VIS REPORTS — ALL AIRCRAFT

(d) If a deterioration in the RVR or VIS is reported once the aircraft is below 1 000 ft or in the FAS, as applicable, then there is no requirement for the approach to be discontinued. In this situation, the normal visual reference requirements would apply at the DA/H.

(e) Where additional RVR information is provided (e.g. midpoint and stop end), this is advisory; such information may be useful to the pilot in order to determine whether there will be sufficient visual reference to control the aircraft during roll-out and taxi. For operations where the aircraft will be controlled manually during roll-out, Table 1 in AMC1 SPA.LVO.100(a) provides an indication of the RVR that may be required to allow manual lateral control of the aircraft on the runway.

AMC1 NCC.OP.230(b) Commencement and continuation of approach

MINIMUM RVR FOR CONTINUATION OF APPROACH — HELICOPTERS

(a) The touchdown RVR should be the controlling RVR.

(b) If the touchdown RVR is not reported, then the midpoint RVR should be the controlling RVR.

AMC1 NCC.OP.230(c) Commencement and continuation of approach

VISUAL REFERENCES FOR INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS

For instrument approach operations Type A and CAT I instrument approach operations Type B, at least one of the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot at the MDA/H or the DA/H:

(a) elements of the approach lighting system;

(b) the threshold;

(c) the threshold markings;

(d) the threshold lights;

(e) the threshold identification lights;

(f) the visual glide path indicator;

(g) the TDZ or TDZ markings;

(h) the TDZ lights;

(i) the FATO/runway edge lights;

(j) for helicopter PinS approaches, the identification beacon light and visual ground reference;

(k) for helicopter PinS approaches, the identifiable elements of the environment defined on the instrument chart;

(l) for helicopter PinS approaches with instructions to 'proceed VFR', sufficient visual cues to determine that VFR criteria are met; or

(m) other visual references specified in the operations manual.

GM1 NCC.OP.230(f) Commencement and continuation of approach

APPROACHES WITH NO INTENTION TO LAND

The approach may be continued to the DA/H or the MDA/H regardless of the reported RVR or VIS. Such operations should be coordinated with air traffic services (ATS).

GM1 NCC.OP.235 EFVS 200 operations

GENERAL

(a) EFVS operations exploit the improved visibility provided by the EFVS to extend the visual segment of an instrument approach. EFVSs cannot be used to extend the instrument segment of an approach and thus the DH for EFVS 200 operations is always the same as for the same approach conducted without EFVS.

(b) Equipment for EFVS 200 operations

(1) In order to conduct EFVS 200 operations, a certified EFVS is used (EFVS-A or EFVS-L). An EFVS is an enhanced vision system (EVS) that also incorporates a flight guidance system and displays the image on a HUD or equivalent display. The flight guidance system will incorporate aircraft flight information and flight symbology.

(2) In multi-pilot operations, a suitable display of EFVS sensory imagery is provided to the pilot monitoring.

(c) Suitable approach procedures

(1) Types of approach operation are specified in AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(2). EFVS 200 operations are used for 3D approach operations. This may include operations based on NPA procedures, approach procedures with vertical guidance and PA procedures including approach operations requiring specific approvals, provided that the operator holds the necessary approvals.

(2) Offset approaches Refer to AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(2).

(3) Circling approaches EFVSs incorporate a HUD or an equivalent system so that the EFVS image of the scene ahead of the aircraft is visible in the pilot's forward external FOV. Circling operations require the pilot to maintain visual references that may not be directly ahead of the aircraft and may not be aligned with the current flight path. EFVSs cannot therefore be used in place of natural visual reference for circling approaches.

(d) The aerodrome operating minima for EFVS 200 operations are determined in accordance with AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(8).

The performance of EFVSs depends on the technology used and weather conditions encountered. Table 1 'Operations utilising EFVS: RVR reduction' has been developed after an operational evaluation of two different EVSs, both using infrared sensors, along with data and support provided by the FAA. Approaches were flown in a variety of conditions including fog, rain and snow showers, as well as at night to aerodromes located in mountainous terrain. Table 1 contains conservative figures to cater for the expected performance of infrared sensors in the variety of conditions that might be encountered. Some systems may have better capability than those used for the evaluation, but credit cannot be taken for such performance in EFVS 200 operations.

(e) The conditions for commencement and continuation of the approach are in accordance with NCC.OP.230.

Pilots conducting EFVS 200 operations may commence an approach and continue that approach below 1 000 ft above the aerodrome or into the FAS if the reported RVR or CMV is equal to or greater than the lowest RVR minima determined in accordance with AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(8) and if all the conditions for the conduct of EFVS 200 operations are met.

Should any equipment required for EFVS 200 operations be unserviceable or unavailable, the conditions to conduct EFVS 200 operations would not be satisfied, and the approach should not be commenced. In the event of failure of the equipment required for EFVS 200 operations after the aircraft descends below 1 000 ft above the aerodrome or into the FAS, the conditions of NCC.OP.230 would no longer be satisfied unless the RVR reported prior to commencement of the approach was sufficient for the approach to be flown without the use of EFVS in lieu of natural vision.

(f) The EFVS image requirements at the DA/H are specified in AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(4).

The requirements for features to be identifiable on the EFVS image in order to continue approach below the DH are more stringent than the visual reference requirements for the same approach flown without EFVS. The more stringent standard is needed because the EFVS might not display the colour of lights used to identify specific portions of the runway and might not consistently display the runway markings. Any visual approach path indicator using colour-coded lights may be unusable.

(g) Obstacle clearance in the visual segment

The ‘visual segment’ is the portion of the approach between the DH or the MAPt and the runway threshold. In the case of EFVS 200 operations, this part of the approach may be flown using the EFVS image as the primary reference and obstacles may not always be identifiable on an EFVS image. The operational assessment specified in AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(2) is therefore required to ensure obstacle clearance during the visual segment.

(h) Visual reference requirements at 200 ft above the threshold

For EFVS 200 operations, natural visual reference is required by a height of 200 ft above the runway threshold. The objective of this requirement is to ensure that the pilot will have sufficient visual reference to land. The visual reference should be the same as the one required for the same approach flown without the use of EFVS.

Some EFVSs may have additional requirements that have to be fulfilled at this height to allow the approach to continue, such as a requirement to check that elements of the EFVS display remain correctly aligned and scaled to the external view. Any such requirements will be detailed in the AFM and included in the operator’s procedures.

(i) Specific approval for EFVS

In order to use an EFVS without natural visual reference below 200 ft above the threshold, the operator needs to hold a specific approval in accordance with Part-SPA.

(j) Go-around

A go-around will be promptly executed if the required visual references are not maintained on the EFVS image at any time after the aircraft has descended below the DA/H or if the required visual references are not distinctly visible and identifiable using natural vision after the aircraft is below 200 ft. It is considered more likely that an EFVS 200 operation could result in the initiation of a go-around below the DA/H than the equivalent approach flown without EFVS, and thus the operational assessment required by AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(2) takes into account the possibility of a balked landing.

An obstacle free zone (OFZ) may also be provided for CAT I precision approach (PA) procedures. Where an OFZ is not provided for a CAT I precision approach, this may be indicated on the approach chart. NPA procedures and approach procedures with vertical guidance provide obstacle clearance for the missed approach based on the assumption that a go-around is executed at the MAPt and not below the MDH.

AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(1) EFVS 200 operations

EQUIPMENT CERTIFICATION

For EFVS 200 operations, the aircraft should be equipped with an approach system using EFVS-A or a landing system using EFVS-L.

AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(2) EFVS 200 operations

AERODROMES AND INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES SUITABLE FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

(a) For EFVS 200 operations, the operator should verify the suitability of a runway before authorising EFVS operations to that runway through an operational assessment taking into account the following elements:

   (1) the obstacle situation;

   (2) the type of aerodrome lighting;

   (3) the available IAPs;

   (4) the aerodrome operating minima; and

   (5) any non-standard conditions that may affect the operations.

(b) EFVS 200 operations should only be conducted as 3D operations, using an IAP in which the final approach track is offset by a maximum of 3 degrees from the extended centre line of the runway.

(c) The IAP should be designed in accordance with PANS-OPS, Volume I (ICAO Doc 8168) or equivalent criteria.

AMC2 NCC.OP.235(a)(2) EFVS 200 operations

VERIFICATION OF THE SUITABILITY OF RUNWAYS FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

The operational assessment before authorising the use of a runway for EFVS 200 operations may be conducted as follows:

(a) Check whether the runway has been promulgated as suitable for EFVS 200 operations or is certified as a PA category II or III runway by the State of the aerodrome. If this is so, then check whether and where the approach and runway lights installed (notably incandescent or LED lights) are adequate for the EFVS equipment used by the operator.

(b) If the check in point (a) above comes out negative (the runway is not promulgated as EFVS suitable or is not category II or III), then proceed as follows:

(1) For straight-in IAPs, US Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS) may be considered to be acceptable as an equivalent to PANS-OPS. If other design criteria than PANS-OPS or US TERPS are used, the operations should not be conducted.

(2) If an OFZ is established, this will ensure adequate obstacle protection from 960 m before the threshold. If an OFZ is not established or if the DH for the approach is above 250 ft, then check whether there is a visual segment surface (VSS).

(3) VSSs are required for procedures published after 15 March 2007, but the existence of the VSS has to be verified through an aeronautical information publication (AIP), operations manual Part C, or direct contact with the aerodrome. Where the VSS is established, it may not be penetrated by obstacles. If the VSS is not established or is penetrated by obstacles and an OFZ is not established, then the operations should not be conducted. Note: obstacles of a height of less than 50 ft above the threshold may be disregarded when assessing the VSS.

(4) Runways with obstacles that require visual identification and avoidance should not be accepted.

(5) For the obstacle protection of a balked landing where an OFZ is not established, the operator may specify that pilots follow a departure procedure in the event of a balked landing, in which case it is necessary to verify that the aircraft will be able to comply with the climb gradients published for the instrument departure procedures for the expected landing conditions.

(6) Perform an assessment of the suitability of the runway which should include whether the approach and runway lights installed (notably incandescent or LED lights) are adequate for the EFVS equipment used by the operator.

(c) If the AFM stipulates specific requirements for approach procedures, then the operational assessment should verify that these requirements can be met.

AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(3) EFVS 200 operations

INITIAL TRAINING FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

Operators should ensure that flight crew members complete the following conversion training before being authorised to conduct EFVS operations unless credits related to training and checking for previous experience on similar aircraft types are defined in the operational suitability data established in accordance with EASA Part 21 or any material acceptable to the CAAT:

(a) A course of ground training including at least the following:

(1) characteristics and limitations of head-up displays (HUDs) or equivalent display systems including information presentation and symbology;

(2) EFVS sensor performance in different weather conditions, sensor limitations, scene interpretation, visual anomalies and other visual effects;

(3) EFVS display, control, modes, features, symbology, annunciations and associated systems and components;

(4) the interpretation of EFVS imagery;

(5) the interpretation of approach and runway lighting systems and display characteristics when using EFVS;

(6) pre-flight planning and selection of suitable aerodromes and approach procedures;

(7) principles of obstacle clearance requirements;

(8) the use and limitations of RVR assessment systems;

(9) normal, abnormal and emergency procedures for EFVS 200 operations;

(10) the effect of specific aircraft/system malfunctions;

(11) human factors aspects of EFVS 200 operations; and

(12) qualification requirements for pilots to obtain and retain approval for EFVS 200 operations.

(b) A course of FSTD training and/or flight training in two phases as follows:

(1) Phase one (EFVS 200 operations with aircraft and all equipment serviceable) — objectives:

(i) understand the operation of equipment required for EFVS 200 operations;

(ii) understand operating limitations of the installed EFVS;

(iii) practise the use of HUD or equivalent display systems;

(iv) practise the set-up and adjustment of EFVS equipment in different conditions (e.g. day and night);

(v) practise the monitoring of automatic flight control systems, EFVS information and status annunciators;

(vi) practise the interpretation of EFVS imagery;

(vii) become familiar with the features needed on the EFVS image to continue approach below the DH;

(viii) practise the identification of visual references using natural vision while using EFVS equipment;

(ix) master the manual aircraft handling relevant to EFVS 200 operations including, where appropriate, the use of the flare cue and guidance for landing;

(x) practise coordination with other crew members; and

(xi) become proficient at procedures for EFVS 200 operations.

(2) Phase one of the training should include the following exercises:

(i) the required checks for satisfactory functioning of equipment, both on the ground and in flight;

(ii) the use of HUD or equivalent display systems during all phases of flight;

(iii) approach using the EFVSs installed on the aircraft to the appropriate DH and transition to visual flight and landing;

(iv) approach with all engines operating using the EFVS, down to the appropriate DH followed by a missed approach, all without external visual reference, as appropriate.

(3) Phase two (EFVS 200 operations with aircraft and equipment failures and degradations) — objectives:

(i) understand the effect of known aircraft unserviceabilities including use of the MEL;

(ii) understand the effect of failed or downgraded equipment on aerodrome operating minima;

(iii) understand the actions required in response to failures and changes in the status of the EFVS including HUD or equivalent display systems;

(iv) understand the actions required in response to failures above and below the DH;

(v) practise abnormal operations and incapacitation procedures; and

(vi) become proficient at dealing with failures and abnormal situations during EFVS 200 operations.

(4) Phase two of the training should include the following exercises:

(i) approaches with engine failures at various stages of the approach;

(ii) approaches with failures of the EFVS at various stages of the approach, including failures between the DH and the height below which an approach should not be continued if natural visual reference is not acquired, require either:

(A) reversion to head down displays to control missed approach; or

(B) reversion to flight with downgraded or no guidance to control missed approaches from the DH or below, including those which may result in a touchdown on the runway;

(iii) incapacitation procedures appropriate to EFVS 200 operations;

(iv) failures and procedures applicable to the specific EFVS installation and aircraft type; and

(v) FSTD training, which should include minimum eight approaches.

AMC2 NCC.OP.235(a)(3) EFVS 200 operations

RECURRENT TRAINING AND CHECKING FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

(a) The operator should ensure that the pilots are competent to perform EFVS 200 operations. To do so, pilots should be trained every 6 months by performing at least two approaches on each type of aircraft operated.

(b) The operator should ensure that the pilots' competence to perform EFVS 200 operations is checked at each required demonstration of competence by performing at least two approaches on each type of aircraft operated, of which one should be flown without natural vision to 200 ft.

AMC3 NCC.OP.235(a)(3) EFVS 200 operations

RECENT EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

Pilots should complete a minimum of four approaches using the operator's procedures for EFVS 200 operations during the validity period of the periodic demonstration of competence unless credits related to currency are defined in the operational suitability data established in accordance with EASA Part 21 or any equivalent material acceptable to the CAAT.

AMC4 NCC.OP.235(a)(3) EFVS 200 operations

DIFFERENCES TRAINING FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

(a) The operator should ensure that the flight crew members authorised to conduct EFVS 200 operations are provided with differences training or familiarisation whenever there is a change to any of the following:

(1) the technology used in the flight guidance and flight control system;

(2) the HUD or equivalent display systems;

(3) the operating procedures.

(b) The differences training should:

(1) meet the objectives of the appropriate initial training course;

(2) take into account the flight crew members' previous experience; and

(3) take into account the operational suitability data established in accordance with EASA Part 21 or any equivalent material acceptable to the CAAT.

AMC5 NCC.OP.235(a)(3) EFVS 200 operations

TRAINING FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

If a flight crew member is to be authorised to operate as pilot flying and pilot monitoring during EFVS 200 operations, then the flight crew member should complete the required FSTD training for each operating capacity.

GM1 NCC.OP.235(a)(3) EFVS 200 operations

RECURRENT CHECKING FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

In order to provide the opportunity to practise decision-making in the event of system failures and failure to acquire natural visual reference, the recurrent training and checking for EFVS 200 operations is recommended to periodically include different combinations of equipment failures, go-around due to loss of visual reference, and landings.

AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(4) EFVS 200 operations

OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

(a) For EFVS 200 operations, the following should apply:

(1) the pilot flying should use the EFVS throughout the approach;

(2) in multi-pilot operations, a suitable display of EFVS sensory imagery should be provided to the pilot monitoring;

(3) the approach between the FAF and the DA/H should be flown using vertical flight path guidance;

(4) the approach may be continued below the DA/H provided that the pilot can identify on the EFVS image either:

(i) the approach light system; or

(ii) both of the following:

(A) the runway threshold identified by the beginning of the runway landing surface, the threshold lights or the runway end identifier lights; and

(B) the TDZ identified by the TDZ lights, the TDZ runway markings or the runway lights;

(5) a missed approach should be executed promptly if the required visual reference is not distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot without reliance on the EFVS by 200 ft above the threshold.

(b) Operating procedures for EFVS 200 operations should:

(1) be consistent with the AFM;

(2) be appropriate to the technology and equipment to be used;

(3) specify the duties and responsibilities of each flight crew member in each relevant phase of flight;

(4) ensure that flight crew workload is managed to facilitate effective decision-making and monitoring of the aircraft; and

(5) deviate to the minimum extent practicable from normal procedures used for routine operations.

(c) Operating procedures should include:

(1) the required checks for the satisfactory functioning of the aircraft equipment, both before departure and in flight;

(2) the correct seating and eye position;

(3) determination of aerodrome operating minima;

(4) the required visual references at the DH;

(5) the action to be taken if natural visual reference is not acquired by 200 ft;

(6) the action to be taken in the event of loss of the required visual reference; and

(7) procedures for balked landing.

(d) Operating procedures for EFVS 200 operations should be included in the operations manual.

AMC1 NCC.OP.235(a)(8) EFVS 200 operations

AERODROME OPERATING MINIMA — EFVS 200 OPERATIONS

When conducting EFVS 200 operations:

(a) the DA/H used should be the same as for operations without EFVS;

(b) the lowest RVR minima to be used should be determined by reducing the RVR presented in:

(1) Table 8 in AMC5 NCC.OP.110 in accordance with Table 1 below for aeroplanes;

(2) Table 12 of AMC6 NCC.OP.110 in accordance with Table 1 below for helicopters;

(c) in case of failed or downgraded equipment, Table 15 in AMC9 NCC.OP.110 should apply.

Table 1 Operations utilising EFVS: RVR reduction

RVR presented in Table 9 in AMC5 CAT.OP.MPA.110 and Table 13 in AMC6 CAT.OP.MPA.110	RVR (m) for EFVS 200 operations

550	550
600	550
650	550
700	550
750	550
800	550
900	600
1 000	650
1 100	750
RVR presented in Table 9 in AMC5 CAT.OP.MPA.110 and Table 13 in AMC6 CAT.OP.MPA.110	**RVR (m) for EFVS 200 operations**
1 200	800
1 300	900
1 400	900
1 500	1 000
1 600	1 100
1 700	1 100
1 800	1 200
1 900	1 300
2 000	1 300
2 100	1 400
2 200	1 500
2 300	1 500
2 400	1 600

AMC1 NCC.OP.235(c) EFVS 200 operations

EVFS 200 WITH LEGACY SYSTEMS UNDER AN APPROVAL

The EVS should be certified before 1 January 2022 as ‘EVS with an operational credit’.

SUBPART C: AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE AND OPERATING LIMITATIONS

AMC1 NCC.POL.105(a) Mass and balance, loading

CENTRE OF GRAVITY LIMITS — OPERATIONAL CG ENVELOPE AND IN-FLIGHT CG

In the Certificate Limitations section of the AFM, forward and aft CG limits are specified. These limits ensure that the certification stability and control criteria are met throughout the whole flight and allow the proper trim setting for take-off. The operator should ensure that these limits are respected by:

(a) Defining and applying operational margins to the certified CG envelope in order to compensate for the following deviations and errors:

   (1) Deviations of actual CG at empty or operating mass from published values due, for example, to weighing errors, unaccounted modifications and/or equipment variations.

   (2) Deviations in fuel distribution in tanks from the applicable schedule.

   (3) Deviations in the distribution of baggage and cargo in the various compartments as compared with the assumed load distribution as well as inaccuracies in the actual mass of baggage and cargo.

   (4) Deviations in actual passenger seating from the seating distribution assumed when preparing the mass and balance documentation. Large CG errors may occur when ‘free seating’, i.e. freedom of passengers to select any seat when entering the aircraft, is permitted. Although in most cases reasonably even longitudinal passenger seating can be expected, there is a risk of an extreme forward or aft seat selection causing very large and unacceptable CG errors, assuming that the balance calculation is done on the basis of an assumed even distribution. The largest errors may occur at a load factor of approximately 50 % if all passengers are seated in either the forward or aft half of the cabin. Statistical analysis indicates that the risk of such extreme seating adversely affecting the CG is greatest on small aircraft.

   (5) Deviations of the actual CG of cargo and passenger load within individual cargo compartments or cabin sections from the normally assumed mid position.

   (6) Deviations of the CG caused by gear and flap positions and by application of the prescribed fuel usage procedure, unless already covered by the certified limits.

   (7) Deviations caused by in-flight movement of cabin crew, galley equipment and passengers.

(b) Defining and applying operational procedures in order to:

   (1) ensure an even distribution of passengers in the cabin;

   (2) take into account any significant CG travel during flight caused by passenger/crew movement; and

   (3) take into account any significant CG travel during flight caused by fuel consumption/transfer.

AMC1 NCC.POL.105(b) Mass and balance, loading

WEIGHING OF AN AIRCRAFT

(a) New aircraft that have been weighed at the factory may be placed into operation without reweighing if the mass and balance records have been adjusted for alterations or modifications to the aircraft. Aircraft transferred from one Kingdom of Thailand operator to another Kingdom of Thailand operator do not have to be weighed prior to use by the receiving operator, unless the mass and balance cannot be accurately established by calculation.

(b) The mass and centre of gravity (CG) position of an aircraft should be revised whenever the cumulative changes to the dry operating mass exceed ±0.5 % of the maximum landing mass or for aeroplanes the cumulative change in CG position exceeds 0.5 % of the mean aerodynamic chord. This should be done either by weighing the aircraft or by calculation.

(c) When weighing an aircraft, normal precautions should be taken, which are consistent with good practices such as:

(1) checking for completeness of the aircraft and equipment;

(2) determining that fluids are properly accounted for;

(3) ensuring that the aircraft is clean; and

(4) ensuring that weighing is accomplished in an enclosed building.

(d) Any equipment used for weighing should be properly calibrated, zeroed and used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Each scale should be calibrated either by the manufacturer, by a civil department of weights and measures or by an appropriately authorised organisation within 2 years or within a time period defined by the manufacturer of the weighing equipment, whichever is less. The equipment should enable the mass of the aircraft to be established accurately. One single accuracy criterion for weighing equipment cannot be given. However, the weighing accuracy is considered satisfactory if the accuracy criteria in Table 1 are met by the individual scales/cells of the weighing equipment used:

Table 1: Accuracy criteria for weighing equipment

For a scale/cell load	An accuracy of
below 2 000 kg	± 1 %
from 2 000 kg to 20 000 kg	± 20 kg
above 20 000 kg	± 0.1 %

AMC1 NCC.POL.105(c) Mass and balance, loading

DRY OPERATING MASS

(a) The dry operating mass should include:

(1) crew and crew baggage;

(2) catering and removable passenger service equipment; and

(3) tank water and lavatory chemicals.

(b) The operator should correct the dry operating mass to account for any additional crew baggage. The position of this additional baggage should be accounted for when establishing the centre of gravity of the aircraft.

(c) The operator should establish a procedure in the operations manual to determine when to select actual or standard masses for crew members.

(d) When determining the actual mass by weighing, crew members' personal belongings and hand baggage should be included. Such weighing should be conducted immediately prior to boarding the aircraft.

AMC1 NCC.POL.105(d) Mass and balance, loading

MASS VALUES FOR PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE

(a) The predetermined mass for hand baggage and clothing should be established by the operator on the basis of studies relevant to its particular operation. In any case, it should not be less than:

(1) 4 kg for clothing; and

(2) 6 kg for hand baggage.

The passengers' stated mass and the mass of passengers' clothing and hand baggage should be checked prior to boarding and adjusted, if necessary. The operator should establish a procedure in the operations manual when to select actual or standard masses and the procedure to be followed when using verbal statements.

(b) When determining the actual mass by weighing, passengers' personal belongings and hand baggage should be included. Such weighing should be conducted immediately prior to boarding the aircraft.

(c) When determining the mass of passengers by using standard mass values, provided in Tables 1 and 2 of NCC.POL.105(e), infants occupying separate passenger seats should be considered as children for the purpose of this AMC. When the total number of passenger seats available on an aircraft is 20 or more, the standard masses for males and females in Table 1 of NCC.POL.105(e) should be used. As an alternative, in cases where the total number of passenger seats available is 30 or more, the 'All Adult' mass values in Table 1 of NCC.POL.105(e) may be used.

On aeroplane flights with 19 passenger seats or less and all helicopter flights where no hand baggage is carried in the cabin or where hand baggage is accounted for separately, 6 kg may be deducted from male and female masses in Table 2 of NCC.POL.105(e). Articles such as an overcoat, an umbrella, a small handbag or purse, reading material or a small camera are not considered as hand baggage.

For helicopter operations in which a survival suit is provided to passengers, 3 kg should be added to the passenger mass value.

(d) Mass values for baggage.

The mass of checked baggage should be checked prior to loading and increased, if necessary.

(e) On any flight identified as carrying a significant number of passengers whose masses, including hand baggage, are expected to significantly deviate from the standard passenger mass, the operator should determine the actual mass of such passengers by weighing or by adding an adequate mass increment.

(f) If standard mass values for checked baggage are used and a significant number of passengers' checked baggage is expected to significantly deviate from the standard baggage mass, the operator should determine the actual mass of such baggage by weighing or by adding an adequate mass increment.

GM1 NCC.POL.105(d) Mass and balance, loading

ADJUSTMENT OF STANDARD MASSES

When standard mass values are used, item (e) of AMC1 NCC.POL.105(d) states that the operator should identify and adjust the passenger and checked baggage masses in cases where significant numbers of passengers or quantities of baggage are suspected of significantly deviating from the standard values. Therefore, the operations manual should contain instructions to ensure that:

(a) check-in, operations and loading personnel as well as cabin and flight crew report or take appropriate action when a flight is identified as carrying a significant number of passengers whose masses, including hand baggage, are expected to significantly deviate from the standard passenger mass, and/or groups of passengers carrying exceptionally heavy baggage; and

(b) on small aircraft, where the risks of overload and/or CG errors are the greatest, pilots pay special attention to the load and its distribution and make proper adjustments.

GM1 NCC.POL.105(e) Mass and balance, loading

TYPE OF FLIGHTS

(a) For the purpose of Table 3 of NCC.POL.105(e):

    (1) domestic flight means a flight with origin and destination within the borders of the Kingdom of Thailand .

    (2) flights within the S.E. Asian region means flights, other than domestic flights, whose origin and destination are within the area specified in item (b).

    (3) Intercontinental flight means flights beyond the S.E. Asian region with origin and destination in different continents.

(b) Flights within the S.E.Asian region are flights conducted within the following area:

    — N7200 E04500
    — N4000 E04500
    — N3500 E03700
    — N3000 E03700
    — N3000 W00600
    — N2700 W00900
    — N2700 W03000
    — N6700 W03000
    — N7200 W01000
    — N7200 E04500

GM1 NCC.POL.105(g) Mass and balance, loading

FUEL DENSITY

(a) If the actual fuel density is not known, the operator may use standard fuel density values for determining the mass of the fuel load. Such standard values should be based on current fuel density measurements for the airports or areas concerned.

(b) Typical fuel density values are:

(1) Gasoline (reciprocating engine fuel) – 0.71

(2) JET A1 (Jet fuel JP 1) – 0.79

(3) JET B (Jet fuel JP 4) – 0.76

(4) (4) Oil – 0.88

AMC1 NCC.POL.110(a) Mass and balance data and documentation

CONTENTS

The mass and balance documentation should include advice to the pilot-in-command whenever a non-standard method has been used for determining the mass of the load.

AMC2 NCC.POL.110(b) Mass and balance data and documentation

INTEGRITY

The operator should verify the integrity of mass and balance data and documentation generated by a computerised mass and balance system, at intervals not exceeding 6 months. The operator should establish a system to check that amendments of its input data are incorporated properly in the system and that the system is operating correctly on a continuous basis.

AMC1 NCC.POL.110(c) Mass and balance data and documentation

SIGNATURE OR EQUIVALENT

Where a signature by hand is impracticable or it is desirable to arrange the equivalent verification by electronic means, the following conditions should be applied in order to make an electronic signature the equivalent of a conventional hand-written signature:

(a) electronic 'signing' by entering a personal identification number (PIN) code with appropriate security, etc.;

(b) entering the PIN code generates a print-out of the individual's name and professional capacity on the relevant document(s) in such a way that it is evident, to anyone having a need for that information, who has signed the document;

(c) the computer system logs information to indicate when and where each PIN code has been entered;

(d) the use of the PIN code is, from a legal and responsibility point of view, considered to be fully equivalent to signature by hand;

(e) the requirements for record keeping remain unchanged; and

(f) all personnel concerned are made aware of the conditions associated with electronic signature and this is documented.

AMC2 NCC.POL.110(c) Mass and balance data and documentation

MASS AND BALANCE DOCUMENTATION SENT VIA DATA LINK

Whenever the mass and balance documentation is sent to the aircraft via data link, a copy of the final mass and balance documentation as accepted by the pilot-in-command should be available on the ground.

GM1 NCC.POL.110(b) Mass and balance data and documentation

ON-BOARD INTEGRATED MASS AND BALANCE COMPUTER SYSTEM

An on-board integrated mass and balance computer system may be an aircraft installed system capable of receiving input data either from other aircraft systems or from a mass and balance system on the ground, in order to generate mass and balance data as an output.

GM2 NCC.POL.110(b) Mass and balance data and documentation

STAND-ALONE COMPUTERISED MASS AND BALANCE SYSTEM

A stand-alone computerised mass and balance system may be a computer, either as part of an electronic flight bag (EFB) system or solely dedicated to mass and balance purposes, requiring input from the user, in order to generate mass and balance data as an output.

AMC1 NCC.POL.125 Take-off — aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF MASS

The following should be considered for determining the maximum take-off mass:

(a) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(b) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(c) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(d) the runway slope in the direction of take-off;

(e) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tailwind component; and

(f) the loss, if any, of runway length due to alignment of the aeroplane prior to take-off.

AMC2 NCC.POL.125 Take-off — aeroplanes

CONTAMINATED RUNWAY PERFORMANCE DATA

Wet and contaminated runway performance data, if made available by the manufacturer, should be taken into account. If such data is not made available, the operator should account for wet and contaminated runway conditions by using the best information available.

AMC3 NCC.POL.125 Take-off — aeroplanes

ADEQUATE MARGIN

The adequate margin should be defined in the operations manual.

GM1 NCC.POL.125 Take-off — aeroplanes

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

Operation on runways contaminated with water, slush, snow or ice implies uncertainties with regard to runway friction and contaminant drag and therefore to the achievable performance and control of the aeroplane during take-off or landing, since the actual conditions may not completely match the assumptions on which the performance information is based. In the case of a contaminated runway, the first option for the pilot-in-command is to wait until the runway is cleared. If this is impracticable, he or she may consider a take-off or landing, provided that he or she has applied the applicable performance adjustments, and any further safety measures he or she considers justified under the prevailing conditions. The excess runway length available including the criticality of the overrun area should also be considered.

The determination of take-off performance data for wet and contaminated runways should be based on the reported runway surface condition in terms of contaminant and depth.

GM2 NCC.POL.125 Take-off — aeroplanes

ADEQUATE MARGIN

'An adequate margin' is illustrated by the appropriate examples included in Attachment B to ICAO Annex 6, Part I

AMC1 NCC.POL.135 Landing — aeroplanes

GENERAL

The following should be considered to ensure that an aeroplane is able to land and stop, or a seaplane to come to a satisfactorily low speed, within the landing distance available:

(a) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(b) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(c) (C) the runway slope in the direction of landing;

(d) not more than 50 % of the reported head-wind component or not less than 150 % of the reported tailwind component; and

(e) use of the most favourable runway, in still air;

(f) use of the runway most likely to be assigned considering the probable wind speed and direction and the ground handling characteristics of the aeroplane, and considering other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

AMC2 NCC.POL.135 Landing — aeroplanes

ALLOWANCES

The allowances should be stated in the operations manual.

GM1 NCC.POL.135 Landing — aeroplanes

WET AND CONTAMINATED RUNWAY DATA

The determination of landing performance data should be based on information provided in the operations manual (OM) on the reported RWYCC. The RWYCC is determined by the aerodrome operator using the RCAM and associated procedures defined in ICAO Doc 9981 'PANS Aerodromes'. The RWYCC is reported through an RCR in the SNOWTAM format in accordance with ICAO Annex 15.

SUBPART D: INSTRUMENTS, DATA AND EQUIPMENT

SECTION 1 - Aeroplanes

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.100 Instruments and equipment — general

When EUROCAE Standards are referred to in the AMCs to TCAR OPS Part NCC, equivalent standards acceptable to the CAAT may be used to establish compliance.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.100(a) Instruments and equipment — general

APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS REQUIREMENTS

The applicable airworthiness requirements for approval of instruments and equipment required by this Part are the following,

(a) EASA Part 21 or any equivalent certification regulation acceptable to the CAAT for:

(1) aeroplanes registered in the Kingdom of Thailand ; and

(2) aeroplanes registered outside the Kingdom of Thailand but manufactured or designed by an Kingdom of Thailand organisation.

(b) Airworthiness requirements of the state of registry for aeroplanes registered, designed and manufactured outside the Kingdom of Thailand.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.100(b) Instruments and equipment — general

REQUIRED INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS REQUIREMENTS

The functionality of non-installed instruments and equipment required by this Subpart and that do not need an equipment approval, as listed in NCC.IDE.A.100(b), should be checked against recognised industry standards appropriate to the intended purpose. The operator is responsible for ensuring the maintenance of these instruments and equipment.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.100(c) Instruments and equipment — general

NON-REQUIRED INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS REQUIREMENTS, BUT ARE CARRIED ON A FLIGHT

(a) This Guidance Material does not exempt the item of equipment from complying with the applicable airworthiness requirements if the instrument or equipment is installed in the aeroplane. In this case, the installation should be approved as required in the applicable airworthiness requirements and should comply with the applicable Certification Specifications.

(b) The failure of additional non-installed instruments or equipment not required by this Regulation or by the applicable airworthiness requirements or any applicable airspace requirements should not adversely affect the airworthiness and/or the safe operation of the aircraft. Examples are the following:

(1) instruments supplying additional flight information (e.g. stand-alone global positioning system (GPS));

(2) mission dedicated equipment (e.g. radios); and

(3) non-installed passenger entertainment equipment.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.100(d) Instruments and equipment — general

POSITIONING OF INSTRUMENTS

This requirement implies that whenever a single instrument is required in an aeroplane operated in a multi-crew environment, the instrument needs to be visible from each flight crew station.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.105 Minimum equipment for flight

MANAGEMENT OF THE STATUS OF CERTAIN INSTRUMENTS, EQUIPMENT OR FUNCTIONS

The operator should control and retain the status of the instruments, equipment or functions required for the intended operation, that are not controlled for the purpose of continuing airworthiness management.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.105 Minimum equipment for flight

MANAGEMENT OF THE STATUS OF CERTAIN INSTRUMENTS, EQUIPMENT OR FUNCTIONS

(a) The operator should define responsibilities and procedures to retain and control the status of instruments, equipment or functions required for the intended operation, that are not controlled for the purpose of continuing airworthiness management.

(b) Examples of such instruments, equipment or functions may be, but are not limited to, equipment related to navigation approvals as FM immunity or certain software versions.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses

FUSES

A spare electrical fuse means a replaceable fuse in the flight crew compartment, not an automatic circuit breaker or circuit breakers in the electric compartments.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.120&NCC.IDE.A.125 Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

INTEGRATED INSTRUMENTS

(a) Individual equipment requirements may be met by combinations of instruments, by integrated flight systems or by a combination of parameters on electronic displays. The information so available to each required pilot should not be less than that required in the applicable operational requirements, and the equivalent safety of the installation should be approved during type certification of the aeroplane for the intended type of operation.

(b) The means of measuring and indicating turn and slip, aeroplane attitude and stabilised aeroplane heading may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight director systems, provided that the safeguards against total failure, inherent in the three separate instruments, are retained.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.120 Operations under VFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

LOCAL FLIGHTS

For flights that do not exceed 60 minutes' duration, that take off and land at the same aerodrome and that remain within 50 NM of that aerodrome, an equivalent means of complying with NCC.IDE.A.120 (a)(5) & (b)(1)(i) may be:

(a) a turn and slip indicator;

(b) a turn coordinator; or

(c) both an attitude indicator and a slip indicator.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.120(a)(1)&NCC.IDE.A.125(a)(1) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING MAGNETIC HEADING

The means of measuring and displaying magnetic heading should be a magnetic compass or equivalent.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.120(a)(2)&NCC.IDE.A.125(a)(2) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING THE TIME

An acceptable means of compliance is a clock displaying hours, minutes and seconds, with a sweep-second pointer or digital presentation.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.120(a)(3)&NCC.IDE.A.125(a)(3) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE MEANS FOR MEASURING AND DISPLAYING PRESSURE ALTITUDE

The instrument measuring and displaying barometric altitude should be of a sensitive type calibrated in feet (ft), with a sub-scale setting, calibrated in hectopascals/millibars, adjustable for any barometric pressure likely to be set during flight.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.125(a)(3) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

ALTIMETERS — IFR OR NIGHT OPERATIONS

Except for unpressurised aeroplanes operating below 10 000 ft, the altimeters of aeroplanes operating under IFR or at night should have counter drum-pointer or equivalent presentation.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.120(a)(4)&NCC.IDE.A.125(a)(4) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE INSTRUMENT INDICATING AIRSPEED

The instrument indicating airspeed should be calibrated in knots (kt).

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(c) Operations under VFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS

Two pilots should be considered to be required by the operation if multi-pilot operations are required by one of the following: (a) the AFM; (b) at night, the operations manual.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.120(c) Operations under VFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS ON A VOLUNTARY BASIS — HELICOPTERS OPERATED BY DAY UNDER VFR

If the AFM permits single-pilot operations, and the operator decides that the crew composition is more than one pilot for day VFR operations only, then point NCC.IDE.H.120(c) does not apply. However, additional displays, including those referred to in NCC.IDE.H.120(c), may be required under point NCC.IDE.H.100(e).

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.120(c)&NCC.IDE.A.125(c) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS – DUPLICATE INSTRUMENTS

Duplicate instruments include separate displays for each pilot and separate selectors or other associated equipment where appropriate.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.125(a)(9) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF DISPLAYING OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE

(a) The means of displaying outside air temperature should be calibrated in degrees Celsius.

(b) The means of displaying outside air temperature may be an air temperature indicator that provides indications that are convertible to outside air temperature.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.125(c) Operations under IFR – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS Two pilots should be considered to be required by the operation if multi-pilot operations are required by one of the following: (a) the AFM; (b) the operations manual.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.125(d) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO CONDENSATION OR ICING

The means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system should be a heated pitot tube or equivalent.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.125(f) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CHART HOLDER

An acceptable means of compliance with the chart holder requirement is to display a pre-composed chart on an electronic flight bag (EFB).

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.135 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)

EXCESSIVE DOWNWARDS GLIDESLOPE DEVIATION WARNING FOR CLASS A TAWS

The requirement for a Class A TAWS to provide a warning to the flight crew for excessive downwards glideslope deviation should apply to all final approach glideslopes with angular vertical navigation (VNAV) guidance, whether provided by the instrument landing system (ILS), microwave landing system (MLS), satellite-based augmentation system approach procedure with vertical guidance (SBAS APV (localiser performance with vertical guidance approach LPV)), ground-based augmentation system (GBAS (GPS landing system, GLS)) or any other systems providing similar guidance. The same requirement should not apply to systems providing vertical guidance based on barometric VNAV.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.135 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)

ACCEPTABLE STANDARD FOR TAWS

An acceptable standard for Class A and Class B TAWS may be the applicable European technical standards order (ETSO) issued by EASA , FAA standard or equivalent standard that is acceptable to the CAAT.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.145 Airborne weather detecting equipment

GENERAL

The airborne weather detecting equipment should be an airborne weather radar, except for propeller-driven pressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM not more than 5 700 kg and an MOPSC of not more than nine, for which other equipment capable of detecting thunderstorms and other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather radar equipment, are also acceptable.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.155 Flight crew interphone system

TYPE OF FLIGHT CREW INTERPHONE

The flight crew interphone system should not be of a handheld type.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.160 Cockpit voice recorder

GENERAL

(a) The operational performance requirements for cockpit voice recorders (CVRs) should be those laid down in the European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems), dated March 2003, including Amendments n°1 and 2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The operational performance requirements for equipment dedicated to the CVR should be those laid down in the European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) Document ED-56A (Minimum Operational Performance Requirements For Cockpit Voice Recorder Systems) dated December 1993, or EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including Amendments No°1 and No°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.165 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL CofA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2016 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2023

(a) The operational performance requirements for flight data recorders (FDRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The flight data recorder should record, with reference to a timescale, the list of parameters in Table 1 and Table 2, as applicable.

(c) The parameters to be recorded should meet the performance specifications (designated ranges, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and minimum resolution in read-out) as defined in the relevant tables of EUROCAE Document ED-112, dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and 2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

Table 1: All Aeroplanes

No*	Parameter
1a 1b 1c	Time; or Relative time count Global navigation satellite system (GNSS) time synchronisation
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed; or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading (primary flight crew reference) - when true or magnetic heading can be selected, the primary heading reference, a discrete indicating selection, should be recorded
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying and CVR/FDR synchronisation reference.
9 9a 9b	Engine thrust/power: Parameters required to determine propulsive thrust/power on each engine Flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position (for aeroplanes with non-mechanically linked flight crew compartment — engine controls)
14	Total or outside air temperature
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Lateral acceleration
18 18a 18b	Primary flight control surface and/or primary flight control pilot input (for aeroplanes with control systems in which movement of a control surface will back drive the pilot's control, 'or' applies. For aeroplanes with control systems in which movement of a control surface will not back drive the pilot's control, 'and' applies. For multiple or split surfaces, a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable instead of recording each surface separately. For aeroplanes that have a flight control break-away capability that allows either pilot to operate the controls independently, record both inputs): Pitch axis Roll axis

No*	Parameter
18c	Yaw axis
19	Pitch trim surface position
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Warnings — in addition to the master warning each 'red' warning (including smoke warnings other compartments) should be recorded when the warning condition cannot be determined other parameters or from the CVR
25	Each navigation receiver frequency selection
27	Air—ground status. Air—ground status (and a sensor of each landing gear if installed)

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED- 112.

Table 2: Aeroplanes for which the data source for the parameter is either used by aeroplane systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the aeroplane

No*	Parameter
10 10a 10b	Flaps Trailing edge flap position Flight crew compartment control selection
11 11a 11b	Slats Leading edge flap (slat) position Flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13 13a 13b 13c 13d	Ground spoiler and speed brake: Ground spoiler position Ground spoiler selection Speed brake position Speed brake selection
15	Autopilot, autothrottle, automatic flight control system (AFCS) mode and engagement status
20	Radio altitude. For auto-land/Category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded.
21	Vertical deviation — (the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto-land/CAT III operations, each system should be recorded.):
21a 21b 21c	ILS/GPS/GLS glide path MLS elevation Integrated approach navigation (IAN)/integrated area navigation (IRNAV), verticaldeviation
22 22a 22b 22c	Horizontal deviation — (the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto-land/CAT III operations, each system should be recorded. It is acceptable to arrange them so that at least one is recorded every second): ILS/GPS/GLS localiser MLS azimuth GNSS approach path/IRNAV lateral deviation
26 26a	Distance measuring equipment (DME) 1 and 2 distances: Distance to runway threshold (GLS)

No*	Parameter
26b	Distance to missed approach – Point (IRNAV/IAN)
28 28a 28b 28c	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)/TAWS/ground collision avoidance system (GCAS) status: Selection of terrain display mode, including pop-up display status Terrain alerts, including cautions and warnings and advisories On/off switch position
29	Angle of attack
30 30a 30b	Low pressure warning (each system): Hydraulic pressure Pneumatic pressure
31	Ground speed
32 32a 32b	Landing gear: Landing gear position Gear selector position
33 33a 33b 33c	Navigation data: Drift angle Wind speed Wind direction
33d 33e 33f	Latitude Longitude GNSS augmentation in use
34 34a 34b	Brakes: Left and right brake pressure Left and right brake pedal position
35 35a 35b 35c	Additional engine parameters (if not already recorded in parameter 9 of Table 1 of AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.165 and if the aeroplane is equipped with a suitable data source): Engine pressure ratio (EPR) N1 Indicated vibration level

No*	Parameter
35d	N2
35e 35f 35g 35h	Exhaust gas temperature (EGT) Fuel flow Fuel cut-off lever position N3
36 36a 36b 36c 36d 36e	Traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS)/ACAS — a suitable combination of discretes should be recorded to determine the status of the system: Combined control Vertical control Up advisory Down advisory Sensitivity level
37	Wind shear warning
38 38a 38b	Selected barometric setting: Pilot Co-pilot
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
44 44a	Selected flight path (All pilot selectable modes of operation) - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically: Course/desired track (DSTRK)

No*	Parameter
44b 44c	Path angle Coordinates of final approach path (IRNAV/IAN)
45	Selected decision height - to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
46 46a	Electronic flight instrument system (EFIS) display format: Pilot
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format
48	AC electrical bus status — each bus
49	DC electrical bus status — each bus
50	Engine bleed valve position
51	Auxiliary power unit (APU) bleed valve position
52	Computer failure (all critical flight and engine control systems)
53	Engine thrust command
54	Engine thrust target
55	Computed centre of gravity (CG)
56	Fuel quantity in CG trim tank
57	Head-up display in use
58	Para visual display on
59	Operational stall protection, stick shaker and pusher activation
60 60a 60b 60c 60d 60e 60f	Primary navigation system reference: GNSS Inertial navigational system (INS) VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR)/DME MLS Loran C ILS
61	Ice detection

No*	Parameter
62	Engine warning — each engine vibration
63	Engine warning — each engine over temperature
64	Engine warning — each engine oil pressure low
65	Engine warning — each engine over speed
66	Yaw trim surface position
67	Roll trim surface position
68	Yaw or sideslip angle
69	De-icing and/or anti-icing systems selection
70	Hydraulic pressure — each system
71	Loss of cabin pressure
72	Trim control input position in the flight crew compartment, pitch — when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, displayed trim position or trim command should be recorded
73	Trim control input position in the flight crew compartment, roll — when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, displayed trim position or trim command should be recorded
74	Trim control input position in the flight crew compartment, yaw — when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, displayed trim position or trim command should be recorded
75	All flight control input forces (for fly-by-wire flight control systems, where control surface position is a function of the displacement of the control input device only, it is not necessary to record this parameter):
75a	Control wheel
75b	Control column
75c	Rudder pedal
76	Event marker
77	Date
78	Actual navigation performance (ANP) or estimate of position error (EPE) or estimate of position uncertainty (EPU)

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED- 112.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.165 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL CofA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2023

(a) The operational performance requirements for flight data recorders (FDRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document 112A (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated September 2013, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:

(1) the list of parameters in Table 1 below;

(2) the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below, when the information data source for the parameter is used by aeroplane systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the aeroplane; and

(3) any dedicated parameters related to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the aeroplane as determined by the CAAT.

(c) The parameters to be recorded should meet the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and resolution in read-out) as defined in the relevant tables of EUROCAE Document 112A, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

Table 1: FDR — All aeroplanes

No*	Parameter
1a 1b 1c	Time; or Relative time count Global navigation satellite system (GNSS) time synchronisation
2	Pressure altitude (including altitude values displayed on each flight crew member's primary flight display, unless the aeroplane is type certified before 1 January 2023 and recording the values displayed at the captain position or the first officer position would require extensive modification)
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed (including values of indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed displayed on each flight crew member's primary flight display, unless the aeroplane is type certified before 1 January 2023 and recording the values displayed at the captain position or the first officer position would require extensive modification)
4	Heading (primary flight crew reference) — when true or magnetic heading can be selected, the primary heading reference, a discrete indicating selection should be recorded.
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude — pitch attitude values displayed on each flight crew member's primary flight display should be recorded, unless the aeroplane is type certified before 1 January 2023 and recording the values displayed at the captain position or the first officer position would require extensive modification.

No*	Parameter
7	Roll attitude — roll attitude values displayed on each flight crew member's primary flight display should be recorded, unless the aeroplane is type certified before 1 January 2023 and recording the values displayed at the captain position or the first officer position would require extensive modification.
8	Manual radio transmission keying and CVR/FDR synchronisation reference
9 9a 9b	Engine thrust/power: Parameters required to determine propulsive thrust/power on each engine, in both normal and reverse thrust Flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position (for aeroplanes with non-mechanically linked engine controls in the flight crew compartment)
14	Total or outside air temperature
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Lateral acceleration
18 18a 18b 18c	Primary flight control surface and/or primary flight control pilot input (For aeroplanes with control s in which the movement of a control surface will back drive the pilot's control, 'or' applies. For aero with control systems in which the movement of a control surface will not back drive the pilot's c 'and' applies. For multiple or split surfaces, a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in recording each surface separately. For aeroplanes that have a flight control break-away capabili allows either pilot to operate the controls independently, record both inputs): Pitch axis Roll axis Yaw axis
19	Pitch trim surface position
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Wzarnings — in addition to the master warning, each 'red' warning that cannot be determined fror parameters or from the CVR and each smoke warning from other compartments should be record
25	Each navigation receiver frequency selection
27	Air–ground status. Air–ground status and a sensor of each landing gear if installed

* The number in the left-hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE 112A.

Table 2: FDR — Aeroplanes for which the data source for the parameter is either used by the aeroplane systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the aeroplane

No*	Parameter
10	Flaps:
10a	Trailing edge flap position
10b	Flight crew compartment control selection
11	Slats:
11a	Leading edge flap (slat) position
11b	Flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13	Ground spoiler and speed brake:
13a	Ground spoiler position
13b	Ground spoiler selection
13c	Speed brake position
13d	Speed brake selection
15	Autopilot, autothrottle and automatic flight control system (AFCS): mode and engagement status (showing which systems are engaged and which primary modes are controlling the flight path and speed of the aircraft)
20	Radio altitude. For auto-land/category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded.
21	Vertical deviation — the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto-land/category III operations, each system should be recorded:
21a	ILS/GPS/GLS glide path
21b	MLS elevation
21c	Integrated approach navigation (IAN) /Integrated Area Navigation, vertical deviation
22	Horizontal deviation — the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto-land/category III operations, each system should be recorded:
22a	ILS/GPS/GLS localiser
22b	MLS azimuth
22c	GNSS approach path/IRNAV lateral deviation

No*	Parameter
26 26a 26b	Distance measuring equipment (DME) 1 and 2 distances: Distance to runway threshold (GLS) Distance to missed approach point (IRNAV/IAN)
28 28a 28b 28c	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)/terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)/ground collision avoidance system (GCAS) status — a suitable combination of discretes unless recorder capacity is limited in which case a single discrete for all modes is acceptable: Selection of terrain display mode, including pop-up display status Terrain alerts, including cautions and warnings and advisories On/off switch position
29	Angle of attack
30 30a 30b	Low pressure warning (each system): Hydraulic pressure Pneumatic pressure
31	Ground speed
32 32a	Landing gear: Landing gear position
33 33a 33b 33c 33d 33e 33f	Navigation data: Drift angle Wind speed Wind direction Latitude Longitude GNSS augmentation in use
34 34a 34b	Brakes: Left and right brake pressure Left and right brake pedal position
35	Additional engine parameters (if not already recorded in parameter 9 of Table 1, and if the aeroplane is equipped with a suitable data source):

No*	Parameter
35a 35b 35c 35d 35e 35f 35g	Engine pressure ratio (EPR) N1 Indicated vibration level N2 Exhaust gas temperature (EGT) Fuel flow Fuel cut-off lever position
35h 35i	N3 Engine fuel metering valve position (or equivalent parameter from the system that directly controls the flow of fuel into the engine) — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
36 36a 36b 36c 36d 36e	Traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS)/airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) — a suitable combination of discretes should be recorded to determine the status of the system: Combined control Vertical control Up advisory Down advisory Sensitivity level
37	Wind shear warning
38 38a 38b	Selected barometric setting — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically: Pilot selected barometric setting Co-pilot selected barometric setting
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically

No*	Parameter
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
44 44a 44b 44c	Selected flight path (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically: Course/desired track (DSTRK) Path angle Coordinates of final approach path (IRNAV/IAN)
45	Selected decision height — to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
46 46a 46b	Electronic flight instrument system (EFIS) display format, showing the display system status: Pilot Co-pilot
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format, showing the display system status
48	Alternating current (AC) electrical bus status — each bus
49	Direct current (DC) electrical bus status — each bus
50	Engine bleed valve(s) position
51	Auxiliary power unit (APU) bleed valve(s) position
52	Computer failure — all critical flight and engine control systems
53	Engine thrust command
54	Engine thrust target
55	Computed centre of gravity (CG)
56	Fuel quantity in CG trim tank
57	Head-up display in use
58	Paravisual display on
59	Operational stall protection, stick shaker and pusher activation
60 60a	Primary navigation system reference: GNSS

No*	Parameter
60b 60c 60d 60e 60f	Inertial navigational system (INS) VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR)/distance measuring equipment (DME) MLS Loran C ILS
61	Ice detection
62	Engine warning — each engine vibration
63	Engine warning — each engine over temperature
64	Engine warning — each engine oil pressure low
65	Engine warning — each engine overspeed
66	Yaw trim surface position
67	Roll trim surface position
68	Yaw or sideslip angle
69	De-icing and/or anti-icing systems selection
70	Hydraulic pressure — each system
71	Loss of cabin pressure
72	Trim control input position in the flight crew compartment, pitch — when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, displayed trim position or trim command should be recorded.
73	Trim control input position in the flight crew compartment, roll — when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, displayed trim position or trim command should be recorded.
74	Trim control input position in the flight crew compartment, yaw — when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, displayed trim position or trim command should be recorded.
75 75a 75b 75c	All flight control input forces (for fly-by-wire flight control systems, where control surface positi function of the displacement of the control input device only, it is not necessary to record this param Control wheel input forces Control column input forces Rudder pedal input forces
76	Event marker

No*	Parameter
77	Date
78	Actual navigation performance (ANP) or estimate of position error (EPE) or estimate of position unce (EPU)
79	Cabin pressure altitude — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only does not require extensive modification.
80	Aeroplane computed weight — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded this does not require extensive modification.
81 81a	Flight director command: Left flight director pitch command — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be record if this does not require extensive modification.
81b 81c 81d	Left flight director roll command — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be record if this does not require extensive modification. Right flight director pitch command — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be re only if this does not require extensive modification. Right flight director roll command — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be record if this does not require extensive modification.
82	Vertical speed — for aeroplanes type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this do require extensive modification.

* The number in the left-hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE Document 112A

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.170 Data link recording

GENERAL

(a) As a means of compliance with NCC.IDE.A.170 (a) the recorder on which the data link messages are recorded may be:

(1) the CVR;

(2) the FDR;

(3) a combination recorder when NCC.IDE.A.175 is applicable; or

(4) a dedicated flight recorder. In that case, the operational performance requirements for this recorder should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems), dated March 2003, including amendments No 1 and 2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) As a means of compliance with NCC.IDE.A.170 (a)(2) the operator should enable correlation by providing information that allows an accident investigator to understand what data was provided to the aircraft and, when the provider identification is contained in the message, by which provider.

(c) The timing information associated with the data link communications messages required to be recorded by NCC.IDE.A.170 (a)(3) should be capable of being determined from the airborne-based recordings. This timing information should include at least the following:

(1) the time each message was generated;

(2) the time any message was available to be displayed by the flight crew;

(3) the time each message was actually displayed or recalled from a queue; and

(4) the time of each status change.

(d) The message priority should be recorded when it is defined by the protocol of the data link communication message being recorded.

(e) The expression 'taking into account the system's architecture', in NCC.IDE.A.170 (a)(3), means that the recording of the specified information may be omitted if the existing source systems involved would require a major upgrade. The following should be considered:

(1) the extent of the modification required;

(2) the down-time period; and

(3) equipment software development.

(f) Data link communications messages that support the applications in Table 1 below should be recorded.

(g) Further details on the recording requirements can be found in the recording requirement matrix in Appendix D.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-93 (Minimum Aviation System Performance Specification for CNS/ATM Recorder Systems), dated November 1998.

Table 1: Data link recording

Item No.	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
1	Data link initiation	This includes any application used to log on to, or initiate, a data link service. In future air navigation system (FANS)-1/A and air traffic navigation (ATN), these are ATS facilities notification (AFN) and context management (CM), respectively.	C
2	Controller/pilot communication	This includes any application used to exchange requests, clearances, instructions and reports between the flight crew and controllers on the ground. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application. It also includes applications used for the exchange of oceanic clearances (OCL) and departure clearances (DCL), as well as data link delivery of taxi clearances	C
3	Addressed surveillance	This includes any surveillance application in which the ground sets up contracts for delivery of surveillance data. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) application.	C, F2
4	Flight information	This includes any application used for delivery of flight information data to specific aeroplanes. This includes for example digital automatic terminal information service (D ATIS), data link operational terminal information service (D OTIS), digital weather information services (data link-meteorological aerodrome or aeronautical report (D-METAR) or terminal weather information for pilots (TWIP)), data link flight information service (D-FIS), and Notice to Airmen (electronic NOTAM) delivery.	C
5	Broadcast surveillance	This includes elementary and enhanced surveillance systems, as well as automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast (ADS-B) output data.	M*, F2
6	Aeronautical operat control (AOC) data	This includes any application transmitting or receiving data used for AOC purposes (in accordance with the ICAO definition of AOC). Such systems may also process aeronautical administrative communication (AAC) messages, but there is no requirement to record AAC messages	M*

Item No.	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
7	Graphics	This includes any application receiving graphical data to be used for operational purposes (i.e. excluding applications that are receiving such things as updates to manuals).	M* F1

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.170 Data link recording

GENERAL

(a) The letters and expressions in Table 1 of AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.170 have the following meaning:

(1) C: complete contents recorded.

(2) M: information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.

(3) *: applications that are to be recorded only as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system.

(4) F1: graphics applications may be considered as AOC messages when they are part of a data link communications application service run on an individual basis by the operator itself in the framework of the operational control.

(5) F2: where parametric data sent by the aeroplane, such as Mode S, is reported within the message, it should be recorded unless data from the same source is recorded on the FDR.

(b) The definitions of the applications type in Table 1 of AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.170 are described in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Definitions of the applications type

Item No.	Application Type	Messages	Comments
1	CM		CM is an ATN service
2	AFN		AFN is a FANS 1/A service
3	CPDLC		All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
4	ADS-C	ADS-C reports	All contract requests and reports recorded
		Position reports	Only used within FANS 1/A. Mainly used in oceanic and remote areas.
5	ADS-B	Surveillance data	Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
6	D-FIS		D-FIS is an ATN service. All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
7	TWIP	TWIP messages	Terminal weather information for pilots

Item No.	Application Type	Messages	Comments
8	D-ATIS	ATIS messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-89A, dated December 2003: Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for the 'ATIS' data link service
9	OCL	OCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-106A, dated March 2004: Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Oceanic Clearance' (OCL) data link service
10	DCL	DCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-85A, dated December 2005: Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Departure Clearance' data link service
11	Graphics	Weather maps & other graphics	Graphics exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
12	AOC	Aeronautical operational control messages	Messages exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane. Definition in EUROCAE ED-112,
13	Surveillance	Downlinked aircraft parameters (DAP)	As defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV (Surveillance systems and ACAS).

AAC aeronautical administrative communications

ADS-B automatic dependent surveillance - broadcast

ADS-C automatic dependent surveillance – contract

AFN aircraft flight notification

AOC aeronautical operational control

ATIS automatic terminal information service

ATSC air traffic service communication

CAP controller access parameters

CPDLC controller pilot data link communications

CM configuration/context management

D-ATIS digital ATIS

D-FIS data link flight information service

D-METAR data link meteorological airport report

DCL	departure clearance
FANS	Future Air Navigation System
FLIPCY	flight plan consistency
OCL	oceanic clearance
SAP	system access parameters
TWIP	terminal weather information for pilots

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.170(a) Data link recording

APPLICABILITY OF THE DATA LINK RECORDING REQUIREMENT

(a) If it is certain that the aeroplane cannot use data link communication messages for ATS communications corresponding to any application designated by NCC.IDE.A.170(a)(1), then the data link recording requirement does not apply.

(b) Examples where the aeroplane cannot use data link communication messages for ATS communications include but are not limited to the cases where:

(1) the aeroplane data link communication capability is disabled permanently and in a way that it cannot be enabled again during the flight;

(2) data link communications are not used to support air traffic service (ATS) in the area of operation of the aeroplane; and

(3) the aeroplane data link communication equipment cannot communicate with the equipment used by ATS in the area of operation of the aeroplane.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.175 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

GENERAL

When two flight data and cockpit voice combination recorders are installed, one should be located near the flight crew compartment in order to minimise the risk of data loss due to a failure of the wiring that gathers data to the recorder. The other should be located at the rear section of the aeroplane in order to minimise the risk of data loss due to recorder damage in the case of a crash.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.175 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

GENERAL

(a) A flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder is a flight recorder that records:

(1) all voice communications and the aural environment required by NCC.IDE.A.160; and

(2) all parameters required by NCC.IDE.A.165,

with the same specifications required by NCC.IDE.A.160 and NCC.IDE.A.165.

(b) In addition, a flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder may record data link communication messages and related information required by NCC.IDE.A.170.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

CHILD RESTRAINT DEVICES (CRDs)

(a) A CRD is considered to be acceptable if:

(1) it is a ‘supplementary loop’ belt manufactured with the same techniques and the same materials as the approved safety belts; or

(2) it complies with (b).

(b) Provided the CRD can be installed properly on the respective aircraft seat, the following CRDs are considered acceptable:

(1) CRDs approved for use in aircraft according to the European Technical Standard Order ETSO-C100c on Aviation Child Safety Device (ACSD).

(2) CRDs approved by EASA through a Type Certificate or Supplemental Type Certificate;

(3) Child seat approved for use in motor vehicles on the basis of the technical standard specified in (i). The child seat must be also approved for use in aircraft on the basis of the technical standard specified in either point (ii) or point (iii):

(i) UN Standard ECE R44-04 (or 03), or ECE R129 bearing the respective ‘ECE R’ label; and

(ii) German ‘Qualification Procedure for Child Restraint Systems for Use in Aircraft’ (TÜV/958-01/2001) bearing the label ‘For Use in Aircraft’; or

(iii) Other technical standard acceptable to the CAAT. The child seat should hold a qualification sign that it can be used in aircraft.

(4) Child seats approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Canadian CMVSS 213/213.1 bearing the respective label.

(5) Child seat approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to US FMVSS No 213 and bearing one or two label displaying the following two sentences:

(i) ‘THIS CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS’; and

(ii) In red letters ‘THIS RESTRAINT IS CERTIFIED FOR USE IN MOTOR VEHICLES AND AIRCRAFT’;

(6) Child seats approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Australia/New Zealand’s technical standard AS/NZS 1754:2013 bearing the green part on the label displaying ‘For Use in Aircraft; and

(7) CRDs manufactured and tested according to other technical standards equivalent to those listed above. The device should be marked with an associated qualification sign, which shows the name of the qualification organisation and a specific identification number, related to the associated qualification project. The qualifying organisation should be a competent and independent organisation that is acceptable to the CAAT.

(c) Location

(1) Forward facing child seats may be installed on both forward and rearward facing passenger seats but only when fitted in the same direction as the passenger seat on which they are positioned. Rearward facing child seats should only be installed on forward facing passenger seats. A child seat may not be installed within the radius of action of an airbag, unless it is obvious that the airbag is de-activated or it can be demonstrated that there is no negative impact from the airbag.

(2) An infant/child in a CRD should be located in the vicinity of a floor level exit as feasible.

(3) An infant/child in a CRD should not hinder evacuation for any passenger.

(4) An infant in a CRD should neither be located in the row (where rows are existing) leading to an emergency exit nor located in a row immediately forward or aft of an emergency exit. A window passenger seat is the preferred location. An aisle passenger seat or a cross aisle passenger seat that forms part of the evacuation route to exits is not recommended. Other locations may be acceptable provided the access of neighbour passengers to the nearest aisle is not obstructed by the CRD.

(5) In general, only one CRD per row segment is recommended. More than one CRD per row segment is allowed if the infants/children are from the same family or travelling group provided the infants/children are accompanied by a responsible adult sitting next to them in the same row segment.

(6) A row segment is one or more seats side-by-side separated from the next row segment by an aisle.

(d) Installation

(1) CRDs should only be installed on a suitable aircraft seat with the type of connecting device they are approved or qualified for. E.g., CRDs to be connected by a three point harness only (most rearward facing baby CRDs currently available) should not be attached to an aeroplane seat with a lap belt only; a CRD designed to be attached to a vehicle seat by means of rigid bar lower anchorages (ISO-FIX or US equivalent) only, should only be used on aeroplane seats that are equipped with such connecting devices and should not be attached by the aeroplane seat lap belt. The method of connecting should be the one shown in the manufacturer's instructions provided with each CRD.

(2) All safety and installation instructions should be followed carefully by the responsible adult accompanying the infant. Crew members should prohibit the use of any inadequately installed CRD or not qualified seat.

(3) If a forward facing CRD with a rigid backrest is to be fastened by a lap belt, the restraint device should be fastened when the backrest of the passenger seat on which it rests is in a reclined position. Thereafter, the backrest is to be positioned upright. This procedure ensures better tightening of the CRD on the aircraft seat if the aircraft seat is reclinable.

(4) The buckle of the adult safety belt should be easily accessible for both opening and closing, and should be in line with the seat belt halves (not canted) after tightening.

(5) Forward facing restraint devices with an integral harness must not be installed such that the adult safety belt is secured over the infant.

(e) Operation

(1) Each CRD should remain secured to a passenger seat during all phases of flight, unless it is properly stowed when not in use.

(2) Where a child seat is adjustable in recline, it should be in an upright position for all occasions when passenger restraint devices are required.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

UPPER TORSO RESTRAINT SYSTEM

(a) A restraint system including a seat belt, two shoulder straps and additional straps is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for restraint systems with two shoulder straps.

(b) An upper torso restraint system which restrains permanently the torso of the occupant is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for an upper torso restraint system incorporating a device that will automatically restrain the occupant's torso in the event of rapid deceleration.

(c) The use of the upper torso restraint independently from the use of the seat belt is intended as an option for the comfort of the occupant of the seat in those phases of flight where only the seat belt is required to be fastened. A restraint system including a seat belt and an upper torso restraint that both remain permanently fastened is also acceptable.

SEAT BELT

A seat belt with a diagonal shoulder strap (three anchorage points) is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for a seat belt (two anchorage points).

AMC3 NCC.IDE.A.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

SEATS FOR MINIMUM REQUIRED CABIN CREW

(a) Seats for the minimum required cabin crew members should be located near required floor level emergency exits, except if the emergency evacuation of passengers would be enhanced by seating cabin crew members elsewhere. In this case, other locations are acceptable.

(b) Such seats should be forward or rearward facing within 15° of the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

EMERGENCY LANDING DYNAMIC CONDITIONS

Emergency landing dynamic conditions are defined in 23.562 of CS-23 or equivalent and in 25.562 of CS-25 or equivalent.

GM2 NCC.IDE.A.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

USE OF CHILD SEATS ON BOARD

Guidance on child restraint devices and facilitation of mutual acceptance of these devices can be found in ICAO Doc 10049 'Manual on the approval and use of child restraint systems'.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.190 First-aid kit

CONTENT OF FIRST-AID KITS

(a) First-aid kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits should be supplemented by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers, number of decks, etc.).

(b) The following should be included in the FAKs:

(1) Equipment:

(i) bandages (assorted sizes, including a triangular bandage);

(ii) burns dressings (unspecified);

(iii) wound dressings (large and small);

(iv) adhesive dressings (assorted sizes);

(v) adhesive tape;

(vi) adhesive wound closures;

(vii) safety pins;

(viii) safety scissors;

(ix) antiseptic wound cleaner;

(x) disposable resuscitation aid;

(xi) disposable gloves;

(xii) tweezers: splinter;

(xiii) thermometers (non-mercury); and

(xiv) surgical masks.

(2) Medications:

(i) simple analgesic (including paediatric form – if the type of operation does not include transport of children or infants, the paediatric form may not be included);

(ii) antiemetic— non-injectable;

(iii) nasal decongestant;

(iv) gastrointestinal antacid, in the case of aeroplanes carrying more than nine passengers;

(v) anti-diarrhoeal medication, in the case of aeroplanes carrying more than nine passengers; and

(vi) antihistamine (including paediatric form – if the type of operation does not include transport of children or infants, the paediatric form may not be included).

(3) Other content. The operator should make the instructions readily available. If an electronic format is available, then all instructions should be kept on the same device. If a paper format is used, then the instructions should be kept in the same kit with the applicable equipment and medication. The instructions should include, as a minimum, the following:

(i) a list of contents in at least two languages (English and one other). This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried;

(ii) first-aid handbook, current edition;

(iii) Basic life support instructions cards (summarising and depicting the current algorithm for basic life support); and

(iv) medical incident report form; and

(4) Additional equipment. The following additional equipment should be carried on board each aircraft equipped with a first-aid kit, though not necessarily in the first-aid kit. When operating multi-deck aircraft, operators should assess if the additional equipment is needed on each deck. The additional equipment should include, as a minimum:

(i) automated external defibrillator (AED) on all aircraft required to carry at least one cabin crew;

(ii) bag-valve masks (masks in three sizes: one for adults, one for children, and one for infants);

(iii) suitable airway management device (e.g. supraglottic airway devices, oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airways);

(iv) eye irrigator;

(v) biohazard disposal bags; and

(vi) basic delivery kit (including sterile umbilical cord scissors and a pair of cord clamps) on all aircraft required to carry at least one cabin crew.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.190 First-aid kit

LOCATION

The location of the first-aid kit in the cabin is normally indicated using internationally recognisable signs.

GM2 NCC.IDE.A.190 First-aid kit

STORAGE

As a best practice and wherever practicable, the emergency medical equipment listed under AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.190 should be kept close together.

GM3 NCC.IDE.A.190 First-aid kit

CONTENT OF FIRST-AID KITS

The operator may supplement first-aid kits according to the characteristics of the operation based on a risk assessment. The assessment does not require an approval by the CAAT.

GM4 NCC.IDE.A.190 First-aid kit

LITHIUM BATTERIES

Risks related to the presence of lithium batteries should be assessed. All equipment powered by lithium batteries carried on an aeroplane should comply with the provisions of AMC1 NCC.GEN.130(f) including applicable technical standards such as (E)TSO-C142.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.190 First-aid kit

MAINTENANCE OF FIRST-AID KITS

To be kept up to date first-aid kits should be:

(a) inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use;

(b) replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant; and

(c) replenished after use in-flight at the first opportunity where replacement items are available.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.195 Supplemental oxygen — pressurised aeroplanes

DETERMINATION OF OXYGEN

(a) In the determination of the amount of oxygen required for the routes to be flown, it is assumed that the aeroplane will descend in accordance with the emergency procedures specified in the operations manual, without exceeding its operating limitations, to a flight altitude that will allow the flight to be completed safely (i.e. flight altitudes ensuring adequate terrain clearance, navigational accuracy, hazardous weather avoidance, etc.).

(b) The amount of oxygen should be determined on the basis of cabin pressure altitude and flight duration, and on the assumption that a cabin pressurisation failure will occur at the pressure altitude or point of flight that is most critical from the standpoint of oxygen need.

(c) Following a cabin pressurisation failure, the cabin pressure altitude should be considered to be the same as the aeroplane pressure altitude, unless it can be demonstrated to the CAAT that no probable failure of the cabin or pressurisation system will result in a cabin pressure altitude equal to the aeroplane pressure altitude. Under these circumstances, the demonstrated maximum cabin pressure altitude may be used as a basis for determination of oxygen supply.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.195(c)(2) Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

QUICK DONNING MASKS

A quick donning mask is a type of mask that:

(a) can be placed on the face from its ready position, properly secured, sealed and supplying oxygen upon demand, with one hand and within 5 seconds and will thereafter remain in position, both hands being free;

(b) can be donned without disturbing eye glasses and without delaying the flight crew member from proceeding with assigned emergency duties;

(c) once donned, does not prevent immediate communication between the flight crew members and other crew members over the aircraft intercommunication system; and

(d) does not inhibit radio communications.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.200 Supplemental oxygen — non-pressurised aeroplanes

DETERMINATION OF OXYGEN

(a) On routes where the oxygen is necessary to be carried for 10 % of the passengers for the flight time between 10 000 ft and 13 000 ft, the oxygen may be provided by:

  (1) a plug-in or drop-out oxygen system with sufficient outlets and dispensing units uniformly distributed throughout the cabin so as to provide oxygen to each passenger at his/her own discretion when seated on his/her assigned seat; or

  (2) portable bottles, when a cabin crew member is required for the flight.

(b) The amount of supplemental oxygen for sustenance for a particular operation should be determined on the basis of flight altitudes and flight duration, consistent with the operating procedures, including emergency procedures, established for each operation and the routes to be flown, as specified in the operations manual.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.205 Hand fire extinguishers

NUMBER, LOCATION AND TYPE

(a) The number and location of hand fire extinguishers should be such as to provide adequate availability for use, account being taken of the number and size of the passenger compartments, the need to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentrations and the location of toilets, galleys, etc. These considerations may result in the number of fire extinguishers being greater than the minimum required.

(b) There should be at least one hand fire extinguisher installed in the flight crew compartment and this should be suitable for fighting both flammable fluid and electrical equipment fires. Additional hand fire extinguishers may be required for the protection of other compartments accessible to the crew in flight. Dry chemical fire extinguishers should not be used in the flight crew compartment, or in any compartment not separated by a partition from the flight crew compartment, because of the adverse effect on vision during discharge and, if conductive, interference with electrical contacts by the chemical residues.

(c) Where only one hand fire extinguisher is required in the passenger compartments, it should be located near the cabin crew member's station, where provided.

(d) Where two or more hand fire extinguishers are required in the passenger compartments and their location is not otherwise dictated by consideration of (a), an extinguisher should be located near each end of the cabin with the remainder distributed throughout the cabin as evenly as is practicable.

(e) Unless an extinguisher is clearly visible, its location should be indicated by a placard or sign. Appropriate symbols may also be used to supplement such a placard or sign.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.210 Marking of break-in points

MARKINGS – COLOUR AND CORNERS

(a) The colour of the markings should be red or yellow and, if necessary, should be outlined in white to contrast with the background.

(b) If the corner markings are more than 2 m apart, intermediate lines 9 cm x 3 cm should be inserted so that there is no more than 2 m between adjacent markings.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT BATTERIES

Batteries used in the ELTs should be replaced (or recharged, if the battery is rechargeable) when the equipment has been in use for more than 1 cumulative hour, and also when 50 % of their useful life (or for rechargeable, 50 % of their useful life of charge), as established by the equipment manufacturer, has expired. The new expiry date for the replacement (or recharged) battery should be legibly marked on the outside of the equipment. The battery useful life (or useful life of charge) requirements of this paragraph do not apply to batteries (such as water-activated batteries) that are essentially unaffected during probable storage intervals.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TYPES OF ELTs AND GENERAL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(a) Point (a) of AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.280 lists the applicable types of

(b) To minimise the possibility of damage in the event of a crash impact, the ELT(AF), ELT(AP), ELT(AD), and ELT(DT) should be rigidly fixed to the aircraft structure, as far aft as is practicable, with its antenna and connections arranged so as to maximise the probability of the signal being transmitted after a crash.

(c) Point (c) of AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.280 on crash survivability and homing-signal capability applies.

(d) Any ELT carried should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III and should be registered with the national agency responsible for initiating search and rescue or other nominated agency.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TERMINOLOGY

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.280 provides explanations of terms used in point NCC.IDE.A.215 and in the related AMC.

GM2 NCC.IDE.A.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE

The guidance provided in GM2 CAT.IDE.A.280 is also applicable to point NCC.IDE.A.215.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.220 Flight over water

ACCESSIBILITY OF LIFE-JACKETS

The life-jacket should be accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, with a safety belt or restraint system fastened.

ELECTRIC ILLUMINATION OF LIFE-JACKETS

The means of electric illumination should be a survivor locator light as defined in the applicable ETSO issued by the EASA or any equivalent material acceptable to the CAAT.

RISK ASSESSMENT

(a) When conducting the risk assessment, the pilot-in-command should base his/her decision, as far as is practicable, on the Regulations and AMCs applicable to the operation of the aeroplane.

(b) The pilot-in-command should, for determining the risk, take the following operating environment and conditions into account:

  (1) sea state;

  (2) sea and air temperatures;

  (3) the distance from land suitable for making an emergency landing; and

  (4) the availability of search and rescue facilities.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.A.220 Flight over water

LIFE–RAFTS AND EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING DISTRESS SIGNALS

(a) The following should be readily available with each life-raft:

(1) means for maintaining buoyancy;

(2) a sea anchor;

(3) life-lines and means of attaching one life-raft to another;

(4) paddles for life-rafts with a capacity of six or less;

(5) means of protecting the occupants from the elements;

(6) a water-resistant torch;

(7) signalling equipment to make the pyrotechnic distress signals described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air;

(8) 100 g of glucose tablets for each four, or fraction of four, persons that the life-raft is designed to carry:

(9) at least 2 litres of drinkable water provided in durable containers or means of making sea water drinkable or a combination of both; and

(10) first-aid equipment.

(b) As far as practicable, items listed in (a) should be contained in a pack.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.220 Flight over water

SEAT CUSHIONS

Seat cushions are not considered to be flotation devices.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.230(a)(2) Survival equipment

SURVIVAL ELT

An ELT(AP) may be used to replace one required ELT(S) provided that it meets the ELT(S) requirements. A water-activated ELT(S) is not an ELT(AP).

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.230(a)(3) Survival equipment

ADDITIONAL SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT

(a) The following additional survival equipment should be carried when required:

(1) 500 ml of water for each four, or fraction of four, persons on board;

(2) one knife;

(3) first-aid equipment; and

(4) one set of air/ground codes.

(b) In addition, when polar conditions are expected, the following should be carried:

(1) a means of melting snow;

(2) one snow shovel and one ice saw;

(3) sleeping bags for use by 1/3 of all persons on board and space blankets for the remainder or space blankets for all passengers on board; and

(4) one arctic/polar suit for each crew member carried.

(c) If any item of equipment contained in the above list is already carried on board the aircraft in accordance with another requirement, there is no need for this to be duplicated.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.230(b)(2) Survival equipment

APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS STANDARD

The applicable airworthiness standard should be CS-25 or equivalent.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.230 Survival equipment

SIGNALLING EQUIPMENT

The signalling equipment for making distress signals is described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air.

GM2 NCC.IDE.A.230 Survival equipment

AREAS IN WHICH SEARCH AND RESCUE WOULD BE ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT

The expression 'areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult' should be interpreted, in this context, as meaning:

(a) areas so designated by the CAAT responsible for managing search and rescue; or

(b) areas that are largely uninhabited and where:

(1) the authority referred to in (a) has not published any information to confirm whether search and rescue would be or would not be especially difficult; and

(2) the authority referred to in (a) does not, as a matter of policy, designate areas as being especially difficult for search and rescue.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.240 Headset

GENERAL

(a) A headset consists of a communication device that includes two earphones to receive and a microphone to transmit audio signals to the aeroplane's communication system. To comply with the minimum performance requirements, the earphones and microphone should match the communication system's characteristics and the flight crew compartment environment. The headset should be adequately adjustable in order to fit the flight crew's head. Headset boom microphones should be of the noise cancelling type.

(b) If the intention is to utilise noise cancelling earphones, the operator should ensure that the earphones do not attenuate any aural warnings or sounds necessary for alerting the flight crew on matters related to the safe operation of the aeroplane.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.240 Headset

GENERAL

The term 'headset' includes any aviation helmet incorporating headphones and microphone worn by a flight crew member.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.245 Radio communication equipment

APPLICABLE AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

For aeroplanes being operated under European air traffic control, the applicable airspace requirements include the Single European Sky legislation.

GM2.NCC.IDE.A.245 Radio communication equipment

Information on the performance-based communication and surveillance (PBCS) concept and guidance material on its implementation are contained in the Performance-based Communication and Surveillance (PBCS) Manual (ICAO Document 9869)

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.245 & NCC.IDE.A.250 Radio communication equipment & Navigation equipment

PERFORMANCE-BASED COMMUNICATION AND SURVEILLANCE (PBCS) OPERATIONS

For operations in airspaces where required communication performance (RCP) and required surveillance performance (RSP) for PBCS have been prescribed, the operator should:

(a) ensure that the communication equipment and surveillance equipment meet the prescribed RCP and RSP specifications respectively, as shown by an AFM statement or equivalent.

(b) ensure that operational constraints are reflected in the MEL;

(c) establish and include in the OM:

   (1) normal, abnormal and contingency procedures;

   (2) the flight crew qualification and proficiency constraints; and

   (3) a training programme for relevant personnel consistent with the intended operations;

(d) ensure continued airworthiness of the communication equipment and surveillance equipment in accordance with the appropriate RCP and RSP specifications respectively;

(e) ensure that the contracted communication service provider (CSP) for the airspace being flown complies with the required RCP and RSP specifications as well as with monitoring, recording and notification requirements; and

(f) participate to monitoring programmes established in the airspace being flown in order to:

   (1) submit the relevant reports of observed communication and surveillance performance respectively; and

   (2) establish a process for immediate corrective action in case non-compliance with the appropriate RCP or RSP specifications is detected.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.245 & NCC.IDE.A.250 Radio communication equipment & Navigation equipment

PBCS OPERATIONS — GENERAL

Detailed guidance material on PBCS operations may be found in the following documents:

(a) ICAO Doc 9869 'Performance-based Communication and Surveillance (PBCS) Manual'

(b) ICAO Doc 10037 'Global Operational Data Link (GOLD) Manual'

PBCS OPERATIONS — AIRCRAFT ELIGIBILITY

(a) The aircraft eligibility for compliance with the required RCP/RSP specifications should be demonstrated by the aircraft manufacturer or equipment supplier and be specific to each individual aircraft or the combination of the aircraft type and the equipment. The demonstrated compliance with specific RCP/RSP specifications may be documented in one of the following documents:

   (1) the type certificate (TC);

(2) the supplemental type certificate (STC);

(3) the aeroplane flight manual (AFM) or AFM Supplement; or

(4) a compliance statement from the manufacturer or the holder of the design approval of the data link installation, approved by the State of Design.

(b) In addition to the indication of compliance with specific RCP/RSP specifications, the aircraft manufacturer or equipment supplier should document any associated operating limitations, information and procedures in the AFM or other appropriate documents.

PBCS OPERATIONS — MEL ENTRIES

(a) The operator should amend the MEL, in accordance with the items identified by the aircraft manufacturer or equipment supplier in the master minimum equipment list (MMEL) or MMEL supplement, in relation to PBCS capability, to address the impact of losing an associated system/sub-system on data link operational capability.

(b) As an example, equipment required in current FANS 1/A-capable aircraft, potentially affecting RCP and RSP capabilities, may be the following:

(1) VHF, SATCOM, or HFDL1 radios, as applicable;

(2) ACARS management unit (MU)/communications management unit (CMU);

(3) flight management computer (FMC) integration; and

(4) printer, if procedures require its use.

PBCS OPERATIONS — OPERATING PROCEDURES

The operator should establish operating procedures for the flight crew and other relevant personnel, such as but not limited to, flight dispatchers and maintenance personnel. These procedures should cover the usage of PBCS-relevant systems and include as a minimum:

(a) pre-flight planning requirements including MEL consideration and flight plan filing;

(b) actions to be taken in the data link operation, to include specific RCP/RSP required cases;

(c) actions to be taken for the loss of data link capability while in and prior to entering the airspace requiring specific RCP/RSP specifications. Examples may be found in ICAO Doc 10037;

(d) problem reporting procedures to the local/regional PBCS monitoring body or central reporting body as applicable; and

(e) compliance with specific regional requirements and procedures, if applicable.

PBCS OPERATIONS — QUALIFICATION AND TRAINING

(a) The operator should ensure that flight crew and other relevant personnel such as flight dispatchers and maintenance personnel are proficient with PBCS operations. A separate training programme is not required if data link communication is integrated in the current training programme. However, the operator should ensure that the existing training programme incorporates a basic PBCS concept and requirements for flight crew and other personnel that have direct impact on overall data link performance required for the provisions of air traffic services such as reduced separation.

(b) The elements covered during the training should be as a minimum:

(1) Flight crew

(i) Data link communication system theory relevant to operational use;

(ii) AFM limitations;

(iii) Normal pilot response to data link communication messages;

(iv) Message elements in the message set used in each environment;

(v) RCP/RSP specifications and their performance requirements;

(vi) Implementation of performance-based reduced separation with associated RCP/RSP specifications or other possible performance requirements associated with their routes;

(vii) Other ATM operations involving data link communication services;

(viii) Normal, non-normal and contingency procedures; and

(ix) Data link communication failure/problem and reporting.

Note (1) If flight crew has already been trained on data link operations, additional training only on PBCS is required, addressing a basic concept and requirements that have direct impact on overall data link performance required for provisions of air traffic services (e.g. reduced separation).

Note (2) Training may be provided through training material and other means that simulate the functionality.

(2) Dispatchers/flight operations officers

(i) Proper use of data link and PBCS flight plan designators;

(ii) Air traffic service provider's separation criteria and procedures relevant to RCP/RSP specifications;

(iii) MEL remarks or exceptions based on data link communication;

(iv) Procedures for transitioning to voice communication and other contingency procedures related to the operation in the event of abnormal behaviour of the data link communication;

(v) Coordination with the ATS unit related to, or following a special data link communication exceptional event (e.g. log-on or connection failures); and

(vi) Contingency procedures to transition to a different separation standard when data link communication fails.

(3) Engineering and maintenance personnel

(i) Data link communication equipment including its installation, maintenance and modification;

(ii) MEL relief and procedures for return to service authorisations; and

(iii) Correction of reported non-performance of data link system.

PBCS OPERATIONS — CONTINUED AIRWORTHINESS

(a) The operator should ensure that aircraft systems are properly maintained to continue to meet the applicable RCP/RSP specifications.

(b) The operator should ensure that the following elements are documented and managed appropriately:

(1) configuration and equipment list detailing the pertinent hardware and software components for the aircraft/fleet(s) applicable to the specific RCP/RSP operation;

(2) configuration control for subnetwork, communication media and routing policies; and

(3) description of systems including display and alerting functions (including message sets).

PBCS OPERATIONS — CSP COMPLIANCE

(a) The operator should ensure that their contracted CSPs notify the ATS units of any failure condition that may have an impact on PBCS operations. Notification should be made to all relevant ATS units regardless of whether the CSP has a contract with them.

(b) The operator may demonstrate the compliance of their contracted CSP through service level agreements (SLAs)/contractual arrangements for data link services or through a joint agreement among PBCS stakeholders such as a Memorandum of understanding (MOU) or a PBCS Charter.

PBCS OPERATIONS — PBCS CHARTER

A PBCS charter has been developed by PBCS stakeholders and is available as an alternative to SLAs in order to validate the agreement between the operator and the CSP for compliance with RCP/RSP required for PBCS operations. The charter is hosted on the website http://www.FANS-CRA.com where operators and CSPs can subscribe.

PBCS OPERATIONS — PARTICIPATION IN MONITORING PROGRAMMES

(c) The operator should establish a process to participate in local or regional PBCS monitoring programmes and provide the following information, including any subsequent changes, to monitoring bodies:

(1) operator name;

(2) operator contact details; and

(3) other coordination information as applicable, including appropriate information means for the CSP/SSP service fail notification.

(d) The process should also address the actions to be taken with respect to problem reporting and resolution of deficiencies, such as:

(1) reporting problems identified by the flight crew or other personnel to the PBCS monitoring bodies associated with the route of flight on which the problem occurred

(2) disclosing operational data in a timely manner to the appropriate PBCS monitoring bodies when requested for the purposes of investigating a reported problem

(3) investigating and resolving the cause of the deficiencies reported by the PBCS monitoring bodies.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.250 Navigation equipment

AIRCRAFT ELIGIBILITY FOR PBN SPECIFICATION NOT REQUIRING SPECIFIC APPROVAL

(a) The performance of the aircraft is usually stated in the AFM.

(b) Where such a reference cannot be found in the AFM, other information provided by the aircraft manufacturer as TC holder, the STC holder or the design organisation having a privilege to approve minor changes may be considered.

(c) The following documents are considered acceptable sources of information:

(1) AFM, supplements thereto, and documents directly referenced in the AFM;

(2) FCOM or similar document;

(3) Service Bulletin or Service Letter issued by the TC holder or STC holder;

(4) approved design data or data issued in support of a design change approval;

(5) any other formal document issued by the TC or STC holders stating compliance with PBN specifications, AMC, Advisory Circulars (AC) or similar documents issued by the State of Design; and

(6) written evidence obtained from the State of Design.

(d) Equipment qualification data, in itself, is not sufficient to assess the PBN capabilities of the aircraft, since the latter depend on installation and integration.

(e) As some PBN equipment and installations may have been certified prior to the publication of the PBN Manual and the adoption of its terminology for the navigation specifications, it is not always possible to find a clear statement of aircraft PBN capability in the AFM. However, aircraft eligibility for certain PBN specifications can rely on the aircraft performance certified for PBN procedures and routes prior to the publication of the PBN Manual.

(f) Below, various references are listed which may be found in the AFM or other acceptable documents (see listing above) in order to consider the aircraft's eligibility for a specific PBN specification if the specific term is not used.

(g) RNAV 5

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNAV 5 operations.

(i) B-RNAV;

(ii) RNAV 1;

(iii) RNP APCH;

(iv) RNP 4;

(v) A-RNP;

(vi) AMC 20-4;

(vii) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 2 (TGL 2);

(viii) JAA AMJ 20X2;

(ix) FAA AC 20-130A for en route operations;

(x) FAA AC 20-138 for en route operations; and

(xi) FAA AC 90-96.

(h) RNAV 1/RNAV 2

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNAV 1/RNAV 2 operations.

(i) RNAV 1;

(ii) PRNAV;

(iii) US RNAV type A;

(iv) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification;

(v) FAA AC 90-100A;

(vi) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 10 Rev1 (TGL 10); and

(vii) FAA AC 90-100.

(2) However, if position determination is exclusively computed based on VOR-DME, the aircraft is not eligible for RNAV 1/RNAV 2 operations.

(i) RNP 1/RNP 2 continental

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 1/RNP 2 continental operations.

(i) A-RNP;

(ii) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification; and

(iii) FAA AC 90-105.

(2) Alternatively, if a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above and position determination is primarily based on GNSS, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 1/RNP 2 continental operations.

However, in the cases mentioned in:

(i) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 10 (TGL 10) (any revision); and

(ii) FAA AC 90-100,

loss of GNSS implies loss of RNP 1/RNP 2 capability.

(j) RNP APCH — LNAV minima

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV operations.

(i) A-RNP;

(ii) AMC 20-27;

(iii) AMC 20-28;

(iv) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification; and

(v) FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification.

(2) Alternatively, if a statement of compliance with RNP 0.3 GNSS approaches in accordance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV operations. Any limitation such as 'within the US National Airspace' may be ignored since RNP APCH procedures are assumed to meet the same ICAO criteria around the world.

(i) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 3 (TGL 3);

(ii) AMC 20-4;

(iii) FAA AC 20-130A; and

(iv) FAA AC 20-138.

(k) RNP APCH — LNAV/VNAV minima

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV/VNAV operations.

(i) A-RNP;

(ii) AMC 20-27 with Baro VNAV;

(iii) AMC 20-28;

(iv) FAA AC 20-138; and

(v) FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification.

(2) Alternatively, if a statement of compliance with FAA AC 20-129 is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, and the aircraft complies with the requirements and limitations of EASA SIB 2014-045, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV/VNAV operations. Any limitation such as 'within the US National Airspace' may be ignored since RNP APCH procedures are assumed to meet the same ICAO criteria around the world.

(l) RNP APCH — LPV minima

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LPV operations.

(i) AMC 20-28;

(ii) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification; and

(iii) FAA AC 90-107.

(2) For aircraft that have a TAWS Class A installed and do not provide Mode-5 protection on an LPV approach, the DH is limited to 250 ft.

(m) RNAV 10

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNAV 10 operations.

(i) RNP 10;

(ii) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification;

(iii) AMC 20-12;

(iv) FAA Order 8400.12 (or later revision); and

(v) FAA AC 90-105.

(n) RNP 4

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 4 operations.

(i) FAA AC 20-138B or later, for the appropriate navigation specification;

(ii) FAA Order 8400.33; and

(iii) FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification.

(o) RNP 2 oceanic

(1) If a statement of compliance with FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 2 oceanic operations.

(2) If the aircraft has been assessed eligible for RNP 4, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 2 oceanic.

(p) Special features

(1) RF in terminal operations (used in RNP 1 and in the initial segment of the RNP APCH)

(i) If a statement of demonstrated capability to perform an RF leg, certified in accordance with any of the following specifications or standards, is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RF in terminal operations.

(A) AMC 20-26; and

(B) FAA AC 20-138B or later.

(ii) If there is a reference to RF and a reference to compliance with AC 90-105, then the aircraft is eligible for such operations.

(q) Other considerations

(1) In all cases, the limitations in the AFM need to be checked, in particular the use of AP or FD which can be required to reduce the FTE primarily for RNP APCH, RNAV 1, and RNP 1.

(2) Any limitation such as 'within the US National Airspace' may be ignored since RNP APCH procedures are assumed to meet the same ICAO criteria around the world.

GM2 NCC.IDE.A.250 Navigation equipment

GENERAL

(a) The PBN specifications for which the aircraft complies with the relevant airworthiness criteria are set out in the AFM, together with any limitations to be observed.

(b) Because functional and performance requirements are defined for each navigation specification, an aircraft approved for an RNP specification is not automatically approved for all RNAV specifications. Similarly, an aircraft approved for an RNP or RNAV specification having a stringent accuracy requirement (e.g. RNP 0.3 specification) is not automatically approved for a navigation specification having a less stringent accuracy requirement (e.g. RNP 4).

RNP 4

(c) For RNP 4, at least two LRNSs, capable of navigating to RNP 4, and listed in the AFM, may be operational at the entry point of the RNP 4 airspace. If an item of equipment required for RNP 4 operations is unserviceable, then the flight crew may consider an alternate route or diversion for repairs. For multi-sensor systems, the AFM may permit entry if one GNSS sensor is lost after departure, provided one GNSS and one inertial sensor remain available.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.255 Transponder

SSR TRANSPONDER

(a) The secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponders of aeroplanes being operated under European air traffic control should comply with any applicable Single European Sky legislation.

(b) If the Single European Sky legislation is not applicable, the SSR transponders should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of Volume IV of ICAO Annex 10.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.A.260 Management of aeronautical databases

AERONAUTICAL DATABASES

When the operator of an aircraft uses an aeronautical database that supports an airborne navigation application as a primary means of navigation used to meet the airspace usage requirements, the database provider should be a Type 2 DAT provider certified in accordance with the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.260 Management of aeronautical databases

AERONAUTICAL DATABASE APPLICATIONS

(a) Applications using aeronautical databases for which Type 2 DAT providers should be certified in accordance with the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions

(b) The certification of a Type 2 DAT provider in accordance with the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions ensures data integrity and compatibility with the certified aircraft application/equipment.

GM2 NCC.IDE.A.260 Management of aeronautical databases

TIMELY DISTRIBUTION

The operator should distribute current and unaltered aeronautical databases to all aircraft requiring them in accordance with the validity period of the databases or in accordance with a procedure established in the operations manual if no validity period is defined.

GM3 NCC.IDE.A.260 Management of aeronautical databases

STANDARDS FOR AERONAUTICAL DATABASES AND DAT PROVIDERS

(a) A 'Type 2 DAT provider' is an organisation as defined in the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions.

(b) Equivalent to a certified 'Type 2 DAT provider' is defined in any Aviation Safety Agreement between the Kingdom of Thailand and a Foreign Country, including any Technical Implementation Procedures, or any Working Arrangements between the CAAT and the competent authority of a Foreign Country.

GM1 NCC.IDE.A.265 Surveillance Equipment

Information on surveillance equipment is contained in the Aeronautical Surveillance Manual (ICAO Document 9924)

Information on RSP specifications for performance-based surveillance is contained in the Performance-based Communication and Surveillance (PBCS) (ICAO Document 9869)

SECTION 2 - Helicopters

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.100 Instruments and equipment — general

When EUROCAE Standards are referred to in the AMCs to TCAR OPS Part NCC, equivalent standards acceptable to the CAAT may be used to establish compliance.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.100(a) Instruments and equipment — general

APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS REQUIREMENTS

The applicable airworthiness requirements for approval of instruments and equipment required by this Regulation are the following:

(a) EASA Part 21 or equivalent certification regulation acceptable to the CAAT for:

  (1) helicopters registered in the Kingdom of Thailand ; and

  (2) helicopters registered outside the Kingdom of Thailand but manufactured or designed by an Kingdom of Thailand organisation.

(b) Airworthiness requirements of the state of registry for helicopters registered, designed and manufactured outside the Kingdom of Thailand .

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.100(b) Instruments and equipment — general

REQUIRED INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS REQUIREMENTS

The functionality of non-installed instruments and equipment required by this Subpart and that do not need an equipment approval, as listed in NCC.IDE.H.100(b), should be checked against recognised industry standards appropriate to the intended purpose. The operator is responsible for ensuring the maintenance of these instruments and equipment.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.100(c) Instruments and equipment — general

NON-REQUIRED INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS REQUIREMENTS, BUT ARE CARRIED ON A FLIGHT

(a) This Guidance Material does not exempt the item of equipment from complying with the applicable airworthiness requirements if the instrument or equipment is installed in the helicopter. In this case, the installation should be approved as required in the applicable airworthiness requirements and should comply with the applicable Certification Specifications.

(b) The failure of additional non-installed instruments or equipment not required by this Regulation or by the applicable airworthiness requirements or any applicable airspace requirements should not adversely affect the airworthiness and/or the safe operation of the aircraft. Examples are the following:

  (1) instruments supplying additional flight information (e.g. stand-alone global positioning system (GPS));

  (2) some aerial work equipment (e.g. some mission dedicated radios, wire cutters); and

  (3) non-installed passenger entertainment equipment.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.100(d) Instruments and equipment — general

POSITIONING OF INSTRUMENTS

This requirement implies that whenever a single instrument is required in a helicopter operated in a multi-crew environment, the instrument needs to be visible from each flight crew station.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.105 Minimum equipment for flight

MANAGEMENT OF THE STATUS OF CERTAIN INSTRUMENTS, EQUIPMENT OR FUNCTIONS

The operator should control and retain the status of the instruments, equipment or functions required for the intended operation, that are not controlled for the purpose of continuing airworthiness management.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.105 Minimum equipment for flight

MANAGEMENT OF THE STATUS OF CERTAIN INSTRUMENTS, EQUIPMENT OR FUNCTIONS

(a) The operator should define responsibilities and procedures to retain and control the status of instruments, equipment or functions required for the intended operation, that are not controlled for the purpose of continuing airworthiness management.

(b) Examples of such instruments, equipment or functions may be, but are not limited to, equipment related to navigation approvals as FM immunity or certain software versions.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.115 Operating lights

LANDING LIGHT

The landing light should be trainable, at least in the vertical plane or optionally be supplemented by an additional fixed light or lights positioned to give a wide spread of illumination.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120&NCC.IDE.H.125 Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

INTEGRATED INSTRUMENTS

(a) Individual equipment requirements may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight systems or by a combination of parameters on electronic displays. The information so available to each required pilot should not be less than that required in the applicable operational requirements, and the equivalent safety of the installation should be approved during type certification of the helicopter for the intended type of operation.

(b) The means of measuring and indicating slip, helicopter attitude and stabilised helicopter heading may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight director systems, provided that the safeguards against total failure, inherent in the three separate instruments, are retained.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(a)(1)&NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(1) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING MAGNETIC HEADING

The means of measuring and displaying magnetic heading should be a magnetic compass or equivalent.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(a)(2)&NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(2) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS FOR MEASURING AND DISPLAYING THE TIME

An acceptable means of compliance is be a clock displaying hours, minutes and seconds, with a sweep-second pointer or digital presentation.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(a)(3)&NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(3) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE MEANS FOR MEASURING AND DISPLAYING PRESSURE ALTITUDE

The instrument measuring and displaying pressure altitude should be of a sensitive type calibrated in feet (ft), with a sub-scale setting, calibrated in hectopascals/millibars, adjustable for any barometric pressure likely to be set during flight.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(a)(4)&NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(4) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE INSTRUMENT INDICATING AIRSPEED

The instrument indicating airspeed should be calibrated in knots (kt).

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(b)(1)(iii)&NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(8) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

STABILISED HEADING

Stabilised heading should be achieved for VFR flights by a gyroscopic heading indicator, whereas for IFR flights this should be achieved through a magnetic gyroscopic heading indicator.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(3) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

ALTIMETERS

Altimeters with counter drum-pointer or equivalent presentation are considered to be less susceptible to misinterpretation for helicopters operating above 10 000 ft.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.125(a)(9) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE

(a) The means of displaying outside air temperature should be calibrated in degrees Celsius.

(b) The means of displaying outside air temperature may be an air temperature indicator that provides indications that are convertible to outside air temperature.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.120(c)&NCC.IDE.H.125(c) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS — DUPLICATE INSTRUMENTS

Duplicate instruments include separate displays for each pilot and separate selectors or other associated equipment where appropriate.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.125(d) Operations under VFR & operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO CONDENSATION OR ICING

The means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system should be a heated pitot tube or equivalent.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.125(f) Operations under IFR — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CHART HOLDER

An acceptable means of compliance with the chart holder requirement is to display a pre-composed chart on an electronic flight bag (EFB).

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.145 Airborne weather detecting equipment

GENERAL

The airborne weather detecting equipment should be an airborne weather radar.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.155 Flight crew interphone system

TYPE OF FLIGHT CREW INTERPHONE

The flight crew interphone system should not be of a handheld type.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.160 Cockpit voice recorder

GENERAL

(a) The operational performance requirements for cockpit voice recorders (CVRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems, March 2003, including Amendments No°1 and No°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The operational performance requirements for equipment dedicated to the CVR should be those laid down in the European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) Document ED-56A (Minimum Operational Performance Requirements For Cockpit Voice Recorder Systems) dated December 1993, or EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including Amendments No°1 and No°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.165 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL CofA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2016 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2023

(a) The operational performance requirements for flight data recorders (FDRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The FDR should record, with reference to a timescale, the list of parameters in Table 1 and Table 2, as applicable.

(c) The parameters recorded by the FDR should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (designated ranges, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and minimum resolution in read-out) defined in EUROCAE ED-112, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(d) FDR systems for which some recorded parameters do not meet the performance specifications of EUROCAE Document ED-112 may be acceptable to the CAAT.

Table 1: FDR parameters — All helicopters

No*	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying CVR/FDR synchronisation reference
9 9a 9b 9c 9d 9e	Power on each engine: Free power turbine speed (N_F) Engine torque Engine gas generator speed (N_G) Flight crew compartment power control position Other parameters to enable engine power to be determined
10 10a 10b	Rotor: Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)
11 11a 11b 11c 11d 11e	Primary flight controls — Pilot input and/or control output position (if applicable): Collective pitch Longitudinal cyclic pitch Lateral cyclic pitch Tail rotor pedal Controllable stabilator (if applicable)
11f	Hydraulic selection
12	Hydraulics low pressure (each system should be recorded.)
13	Outside air temperature
18	Yaw rate or yaw acceleration
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
21	Lateral acceleration
25	Marker beacon passage
26	Warnings — a discrete should be recorded for the master warning, gearbox low oil pressure and stability augmentation system as failure. Other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.
27	Each navigation receiver frequency selection

No*	Parameter
37	Engine control modes

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED- 112.

Table 2: FDR parameters — Helicopters for which the data source for the parameter is either used by helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter

No*	Parameter
14	AFCS mode and engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement (each system should be recorded)
16	Main gear box oil pressure
17 17a 17b 17c	Gear box oil temperature: Main gear box oil temperature Intermediate gear box oil temperature Tail rotor gear box oil temperature
19	Indicated sling load force (if signals readily available)
22	Radio altitude
23 23a 23b 23c	Vertical deviation — the approach aid in use should be recorded: ILS glide path MLS elevation GNSS approach path
24 24a 24b 24c	Horizontal deviation — the approach aid in use should be recorded: ILS localiser MLS azimuth GNSS approach path
28	DME 1 & 2 distances

No*	Parameter
29 29a 29b 29c 29d 29e 29f	Navigation data: Drift angle Wind speed Wind direction Latitude Longitude Ground speed
30	Landing gear or gear selector position
31	Engine exhaust gas temperature (T4)
32	Turbine inlet temperature (TIT/ITT)
33	Fuel contents
34	Altitude rate (vertical speed) - only necessary when available from cockpit instruments
35	Ice detection
36 36a 36b 36c 36d 36e	Helicopter health and usage monitor system (HUMS): Engine data Chip detector Track timing Exceedance discretes Broadband average engine vibration
38 38a 38b	Selected barometric setting — to be recorded for helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically: Pilot Co-pilot
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Not used (selected Mach)
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically

No*	Parameter
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
44	Selected flight path (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
45	Selected decision height (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
46	EFIS display format
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format
48	Event marker

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED- 112.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.H.165 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2023

(a) The operational performance requirements for flight data recorders (FDRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document 112A (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated September 2013, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:

(1) the list of parameters in Table 1 below;

(2) the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below, when the information data source for the parameter is used by helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter; and

(3) any dedicated parameters related to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the helicopter as determined by the CAAT.

(c) The parameters to be recorded should meet the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and resolution in read-out) as defined in the relevant tables of EUROCAE Document 112A, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

Table 1: FDR — All helicopters

No*	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying CVR/FDR synchronisation reference
9	Power on each engine:
9a 9b 9c 9d 9e	Free power turbine speed (N_F) Engine torque Engine gas generator speed (N_G) Flight crew compartment power control position Other parameters to enable engine power to be determined
10 10a 10b	Rotor: Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)
11 11a 11b 11c 11d 11e 11f	Primary flight controls — pilot input or control output position if it is possible to derive either the control input or the control movement (one from the other) for all modes of operation and flight regimes. Otherwise, pilot input and control output position Collective pitch Longitudinal cyclic pitch Lateral cyclic pitch Tail rotor pedal Controllable stabilator (if applicable) Hydraulic selection
12	Hydraulics low pressure (each system should be recorded)

No*	Parameter
13	Outside air temperature
18	Yaw rate or yaw acceleration
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
21	Lateral acceleration
25	Marker beacon passage
26	Warnings — including master warning, gearbox low oil pressure and stability augmentation system failure, and other 'red' warnings where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder
27	Each navigation receiver frequency selection
37	Engine control modes

* The number in the left-hand column reflects the serial numbers depicted in EUROCAE Document 112A.

Table 2: Helicopters for which the data source for the parameter is either used by the helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter

No*	Parameter
14	AFCS mode and engagement status (showing which systems are engaged and which primary modes are controlling the flight path)
15	Stability augmentation system engagement (each system should be recorded)
16	Main gear box oil pressure
17	Gear box oil temperature:
17a	Main gear box oil temperature
17b	Intermediate gear box oil temperature
17c	Tail rotor gear box oil temperature
19	Indicated sling load force (if signals readily available)
22	Radio altitude
23	Vertical deviation — the approach aid in use should be recorded:
23a	ILS glide path
23b	MLS elevation
23c	GNSS approach path
24	Horizontal deviation — the approach aid in use should be recorded:
24a	ILS localiser
24b	MLS azimuth
24c	GNSS approach path
28	DME 1 & 2 distances
29	Navigation data:
29a	Drift angle
29b	Wind speed
29c	Wind direction
29d	Latitude
29e	Longitude
29f	Ground speed
30	Landing gear or gear selector position

No*	Parameter
31	Engine exhaust gas temperature (T4)
32	Turbine inlet temperature (TIT)/interstage turbine temperature (ITT)
33	Fuel contents
34	Altitude rate (vertical speed) — only necessary when available from cockpit instruments
35	Ice detection
36 36a 36b 36c 36d 36e	Helicopter health and usage monitor system (HUMS): Engine data Chip detector Track timing Exceedance discretes Broadband average engine vibration
38 38a 38b	Selected barometric setting — to be recorded for helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically: Pilot Co-pilot
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.
44	Selected flight path (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.
45	Selected decision height (all pilot selectable modes of operation) — to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically.

No*	Parameter
46 46a 46b	EFIS display format (showing the display system status): Pilot First officer
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format (showing the display system status)
48	Event marker
49	Status of ground proximity warning system (GPWS)/terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)/ground collision avoidance system (GCAS):
49a	Selection of terrain display mode including pop-up display status — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
49b	Terrain alerts, both cautions and warnings, and advisories — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification
49c	On/off switch position — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification
50	Traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS)/airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS):
50a	Combined control — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
50b	Vertical control — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
50c	Up advisory — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
50d	Down advisory — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
50e	Sensitivity level — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
51	Primary flight controls — pilot input forces:
51a	Collective pitch — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification
51b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
51c	Lateral cyclic pitch — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
51d	Tail rotor pedal — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if

No*	Parameter
	this does not require extensive modification.
52	Computed centre of gravity — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.
53	Helicopter computed weight — for helicopters type certified before 1 January 2023, to be recorded only if this does not require extensive modification.

* The number in the left-hand column reflects the serial numbers depicted in EUROCAE Document 112A.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.170 Data link recording

GENERAL

(a) As a means of compliance with NCC.IDE.H.170, the recorder on which the data link messages are recorded should be:

(1) the CVR;

(2) the FDR;

(3) a combination recorder when NCC.IDE.H.175 is applicable; or a dedicated flight recorder. In such a case, the operational performance requirements for this recorder should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems), dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) As a means of compliance with NCC.IDE.H.170 (a)(2), the operator should enable correlation by providing information that allows an accident investigator to understand what data was provided to the aircraft and, when the provider identification is contained in the message, by which provider.

(c) The timing information associated with the data link communications messages required to be recorded by NCC.IDE.H.170(a)(3) should be capable of being determined from the airborne-based recordings. This timing information should include at least the following:

(1) the time each message was generated;

(2) the time any message was available to be displayed by the flight crew;

(3) the time each message was actually displayed or recalled from a queue; and

(4) the time of each status change.

(d) The message priority should be recorded when it is defined by the protocol of the data link communication message being recorded.

(e) The expression 'taking into account the system's architecture', in NCC.IDE.H.170 (a)(3), means that the recording of the specified information may be omitted if the existing source systems involved would require a major upgrade. The following should be considered:

(1) the extent of the modification required;

(2) the down-time period; and

(3) equipment software development.

(f) Data link communications messages that support the applications in Table 1 should be recorded.

(g) Further details on the recording requirements can be found in the recording requirement matrix in Appendix D.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-93 (Minimum Aviation System Performance Specification for CNS/ATM Recorder Systems), dated November 1998.

Table 1: Data link recording

Item No	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
1	Data link initiation	This includes any application used to log on to, or initiate, a data link service. In future air navigation system (FANS)-1/A and air traffic navigation (ATN), these are ATS facilities notification (AFN) and context management (CM), respectively.	C
2	Controller/pilot communication	This includes any application used to exchange requests, clearances, instructions and reports between the flight crew and controllers on the ground. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application. It also includes applications used for the exchange of oceanic clearances (OCL) and departure clearances (DCL), as well as data link delivery of taxi clearances.	C
3	Addressed surveillan	This includes any surveillance application in which the ground sets up contracts for delivery of surveillance data. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) application.	C, F2
4	Flight information	This includes any application used for delivery of flight information data to specific helicopters. This includes for example digital automatic terminal information service (D-ATIS), data link operational terminal information service (D-OTIS), digital weather information services (D-METAR or TWIP), data link-flight information service (D-FIS) and Notice to Airmen (electronic NOTAM) delivery.	C
5	Broadcast Surveillance	This includes elementary and enhanced surveillance systems, as well as automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast (ADS-B) output data.	M*, F2

Item No	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
6	AOC data	This includes any application transmitting or receiving data used for AOC purposes (in accordance with the ICAO definition of AOC). Such systems may also process AAC messages, but there is no requirement to record AAC messages	M*
7	Graphics	This includes any application receiving graphical data to be used for operational purposes (i.e. excluding applications that are receiving such things as updates to manuals).	M* F1

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.170 Data link recording

GENERAL

(a) The letters and expressions in Table 1 of AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.170 have the following meaning:

(1) C: complete contents recorded.

(2) M: information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter.

(3)

(4) *: applications that are to be recorded only as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system.

(5) F1: graphics applications may be considered as AOC messages when they are part of a data link communications application service run on an individual basis by the operator itself in the framework of the operational control.

(6) F2: where parametric data sent by the helicopter, such as Mode S, is reported within the message, it should be recorded unless data from the same source is recorded on the FDR.

(b) The definitions of the applications type in Table 1 of AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.170 are described in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Definitions of the applications type

Item No	Application Type	Messages	Comments
1	CM		CM is an ATN service
2	AFN		AFN is a FANS 1/A service
3	CPDLC		All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
4	ADS-C	ADS-C reports	All contract requests and reports recorded
		Position reports	Only used within FANS 1/A. Mainly used in oceanic and remote areas.

Item No	Application Type	Messages	Comments
5	ADS-B	Surveillance data	Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter.
6	D-FIS		D-FIS is an ATN service. All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
7	TWIP	TWIP messages	Terminal weather information for pilots
8	D ATIS	ATIS messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-89A, dated December 2003: Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for the 'ATIS' data link service
9	OCL	OCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-106A, dated March 2004: Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Oceanic Clearance' (OCL) data link service
10	DCL	DCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE ED-85A, dated March 2003: Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Departure Clearance' data link service
11	Graphics	Weather maps & other graphics	Graphics exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the
12	AOC	Aeronautical operational control messages	Messages exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter. Definition in EUROCAE ED-112, dated March 2003.
13	Surveillance	Downlinked Aircraft Parameters (DAP)	As defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV (Surveillance systems and ACAS).

AAC aeronautical administrative communications

ADS-B automatic dependent surveillance - broadcast

ADS-C automatic dependent surveillance – contract

AFN aircraft flight notification

AOC aeronautical operational control

ATIS automatic terminal information service

ATSC air traffic service communication

CAP controller access parameters

CPDLC controller pilot data link communications

CM configuration/context management

D-ATIS digital ATIS

D-FIS data link flight information service

D-METAR data link meteorological airport report

DCL departure clearance

FANS Future Air Navigation System

FLIPCY flight plan consistency

OCL oceanic clearance

SAP system access parameters

TWIP terminal weather information for pilots

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.170(a) Data link recording

APPLICABILITY OF THE DATA LINK RECORDING REQUIREMENT

(a) If it is certain that the helicopter cannot use data link communication messages for ATS communications corresponding to any application designated by NCC.IDE.H.170(a)(1), then the data link recording requirement does not apply.

(b) Examples where the helicopter cannot use data link communication messages for ATS communications include but are not limited to the cases where:

(1) the helicopter data link communication capability is disabled permanently and in a way that it cannot be enabled again during the flight;

(2) data link communications are not used to support air traffic service (ATS) in the area of operation of the helicopter; and

(3) the helicopter data link communication equipment cannot communicate with the equipment used by ATS in the area of operation of the helicopter.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.175 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

COMBINATION RECORDERS

(a) A flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder is a flight recorder that records:

(1) all voice communications and the aural environment required by NCC.IDE.H.160; and

(2) all parameters required by NCC.IDE.H.165,

with the same specifications required by NCC.IDE.H.160 and NCC.IDE.H.165.

(b) In addition, a flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder may record data link communication messages and related information required by the NCC.IDE.H.170.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

CHILD RESTRAINT DEVICES (CRDs)

(a) A CRD is considered to be acceptable if:

(1) it is a supplementary loop belt manufactured with the same techniques and the same materials of the approved safety belts; or

(2) it complies with (b).

(b) Provided the CRD can be installed properly on the respective helicopter seat, the following CRDs are considered acceptable:

(1) CRDs approved for use in aircraft according to the European Technical Standard Order ETSO-C100c on Aviation Child Safety Device (ACSD).

(2) CRDs approved by EASA through a Type Certificate or Supplemental Type Certificate;

(3) Child seat approved for use in motor vehicles on the basis of the technical standard specified in (i). The child seat must be also approved for use in aircraft on the basis of the technical standard specified in either point (ii) or point (iii):

(i) UN Standard ECE R44-04 (or 03), or ECE R129 bearing the respective 'ECE R' label; and

(ii) German 'Qualification Procedure for Child Restraint Systems for Use in Aircraft' (TÜV Doc.: TÜV/958-01/2001) bearing the label 'For Use in Aircraft'; or

(iii) Other technical standard acceptable to the CAAT. The child seat should hold a qualification sign that it can be used in aircraft.

(4) Child seat approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Canadian CMVSS 213/213.1 bearing the respective label.

(5) Child seat approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to US FMVSS No 213 and bearing one or two labels displaying the following two sentences:

(i) 'THIS CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS'; and

(ii) In red letters 'THIS RESTRAINT IS CERTIFIED FOR USE IN MOTOR VEHICLES AND AIRCRAFT';

(6) Child seats approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Australia/New Zealand's technical standard AS/NZS 1754:2013 bearing the green part on the label displaying 'For Use in Aircraft'; and

(7) CRDs manufactured and tested according to other technical standards equivalent to those listed above. The devices should be marked with an associated qualification sign, which shows the name of the qualification organisation and a specific identification number, related to the associated qualification project. The qualifying organisation should be a competent and independent organisation that is acceptable to the CAAT.

(c) Location

(1) Forward facing child seats may be installed on both forward and rearward facing passenger seats but only when fitted in the same direction as the passenger seat on which they are positioned. Rearward facing child seats should only be installed on forward facing passenger seats. A child seat may not be installed within the radius of action of an airbag, unless it is obvious that the airbag is de-activated or it can be demonstrated that there is no negative impact from the airbag.

(2) An infant/child in a CRD should be located in the vicinity of a floor level exit as feasible.

(3) An infant/child in a CRD should not hinder evacuation for any passenger.

(4) An infant/child in a CRD should neither be located in the row (where rows are existing) leading to an emergency exit nor located in a row immediately forward or aft of an emergency exit. A window passenger seat is the preferred location. An aisle passenger seat or a cross aisle passenger seat that forms part of the evacuation route to exits is not recommended. Other locations may be acceptable provided the access of neighbour passengers to the nearest aisle is not obstructed by the CRD.

(5) In general, only one CRD per row segment is recommended. More than one CRD per row segment is allowed if the infants/children are from the same family or travelling group provided the infants/children are accompanied by a responsible adult sitting next to them.

(6) A row segment is one or more seats side-by-side separated from the next row segment by an aisle.

(d) Installation

(1) CRDs tested and approvedfor use in aircraft should only be installed on a suitable passenger seat by the method shown in the manufacturer's instructions provided with each CRD and with the type of connecting device they are approved for the installation in aircraft.CRDs designed to be installed only by means of rigid bar lower anchorages (ISOFIX or equivalent) should only be used on passenger seats equipped with such connecting devices and should not be secured by passenger seat lap beilt.

(2) All safety and installation instructions should be followed carefully by the responsible person accompanying the infant/child. Operators should prohibit the use of a CRD not installed on the passenger seat according to the manufacturer's instructions or not approved for use in the aircraft.

(3) If a forward facing child seat with a rigid backrest is to be fastened by a seat lap belt, the restraint device should be fastened when the backrest of the passenger seat on which it rests is in a reclined position. Thereafter, the backrest is to be positioned upright. This procedure ensures better tightening of the child seat on the aircraft seat if the aircraft seat is reclinable.

(4) The buckle of the adult safety belt should be easily accessible for both opening and closing, and should be in line with the seat belt halves (not canted) after tightening.

(5) Forward facing restraint devices with an integral harness should not be installed such that the adult safety belt is secured over the infant.

(e) Operation

(1) Each CRD should remain secured to a passenger seat during all phases of flight, unless it is properly stowed when not in use.

(2) Where a child seat is adjustable in recline, it should be in an upright position for all occasions when passenger restraint devices are required.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.H.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

UPPER TORSO RESTRAINT SYSTEM

An upper torso restraint system having three straps is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for restraint systems with two shoulder straps.

SAFETY BELT

A safety belt with a diagonal shoulder strap (three anchorage points) is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for safety belts (two anchorage points).

AMC3 NCC.IDE.H.180 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

SEATS FOR MINIMUM REQUIRED CABIN CREW

(a) Seats for the minimum required cabin crew members should be located near required floor level emergency exits, except if the emergency evacuation of passengers would be enhanced by seating the cabin crew members elsewhere. In this case other locations are acceptable. This criterion should also apply if the number of required cabin crew members exceeds the number of floor level emergency exits.

(b) Seats for cabin crew member(s) should be forward or rearward facing within 15° of the longitudinal axis of the helicopter.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.190 First-aid kit

CONTENT OF FIRST-AID KITS

(a) First-aid kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits should be supplemented by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers, etc.).

(b) The following should be included in the FAKs:

(1) Equipment:

(i) bandages (assorted sizes, including a triangular bandage);

(ii) burns dressings (unspecified);

(iii) wound dressings (large and small);

(iv) adhesive dressings (assorted sizes);

(v) adhesive tape;

(vi) adhesive wound closures;

(vii) safety pins;

(viii) safety scissors;

(ix) antiseptic wound cleaner;

(x) disposable resuscitation aid;

(xi) disposable gloves;

(xii) tweezers: splinter;

(xiii) thermometers (non-mercury) ; and

(xiv) surgical masks.

(2) Medications:

(i) simple analgesic (including paediatric form — if the type of operation does not include transport of children or infants, the paediatric form may not be included);

(ii) antiemetic— non-injectable;

(iii) nasal decongestant;

(iv) gastrointestinal antacid, in the case of helicopters carrying more than nine passengers;

(v) anti-diarrhoeal medication in the case of helicopters carrying more than nine passengers; and

(vi) antihistamine (including paediatric form — if the type of operation does not include transport of children or infants, the paediatric form may not be included).

(3) Other content. The operator should make the instructions readily available. If an electronic format is available, then all instructions should be kept on the same device. If a paper format is used, then the instructions should be kept in the same kit with the applicable equipment and medication. The instructions should include, as a minimum, the following:

(i) a list of contents in at least two languages (English and one other). This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried;

(ii) first-aid handbook, current edition;

(iii) Basic life support instructions cards (summarising and depicting the current algorithm for basic life support); and

(iv) medical incident report form;

(4) Additional equipment. The following additional equipment should be carried on board each aircraft equipped with a first-aid kit, though not necessarily in the first-aid kit. The additional equipment should include, as a minimum:

(i) automated external defibrillator (AED) on all aircraft required to carry at least one cabin crew;

(ii) bag-valve masks (masks in three sizes: one for adults, one for children, and one for infants);

(iii) suitable airway management device (e.g. supraglottic airway devices, oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airways);

(iv) eye irrigator; and

(v) biohazard disposal bags.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.190 First-aid kit

LOCATION AND USE

The location of the first-aid kit is normally indicated using internationally recognisable signs. The first-aid kit 'should be readily accessible for use' in helicopter operations should be understood as the first-aid kit being either accessible in flight or immediately after landing. In some operations it is not practicable to use the first-aid kit during flight. Therefore, the first-aid kit can be carried in the cargo compartment, where it will be easily accessible for use as soon as the aircraft has landed, when the following conditions are met:

(a) precautionary landing sites are available;

(b) the lack of cabin space is such that movement or use of the first-aid kit is impaired; and

(c) The installation of the first-aid kit in the cabin is not practicable.

GM2 NCC.IDE.H.190 First-aid kit

STORAGE

As a best practice and wherever practicable, the emergency medical equipment listed under AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.190 should be kept close together.

GM3 NCC.IDE.H.190 First-aid kit

CONTENT OF FIRST-AID KITS

The operator may supplement first-aid kits according to the characteristics of the operation based on a risk assessment. The assessment does not require an approval by the CAAT.

GM4 NCC.IDE.H.190 First-aid kit

LITHIUM BATTERIES

Risks related to the presence of lithium batteries should be assessed. All equipment powered by lithium batteries carried on an aeroplane should comply with the provisions of AMC1 NCC.GEN.130(f) including applicable technical standards such as (E)TSO-C142.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.H.190 First-aid kit

MAINTENANCE OF FIRST-AID KITS

To be kept up to date, first-aid kits should be:

(a) inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use;

(b) replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant; and

(c) replenished after use in-flight at the first opportunity where replacement items are available.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.200 Supplemental oxygen — non-pressurised helicopters

DETERMINATION OF OXYGEN

The amount of supplemental oxygen required for a particular operation should be determined on the basis of flight altitudes and flight duration, consistent with the operating procedures, including emergency procedures, established for each operation and the routes to be flown as specified in the operations manual.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.205 Hand fire extinguishers

NUMBER, LOCATION AND TYPE

(a) The number and location of hand fire extinguishers should be such as to provide adequate availability for use, account being taken of the number and size of the passenger compartments, the need to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentrations and the location of toilets, galleys, etc. These considerations may result in the number of fire extinguishers being greater than the minimum required.

(b) There should be at least one hand fire extinguisher installed in the flight crew compartment and this should be suitable for fighting both flammable fluid and electrical equipment fires. Additional hand fire extinguishers may be required for the protection of other compartments accessible to the crew in flight. Dry chemical fire extinguishers should not be used in the flight crew compartment, or in any compartment not separated by a partition from the flight crew compartment, because of the adverse effect on vision during discharge and, if conductive, interference with electrical contacts by the chemical residues.

(c) Where only one hand fire extinguisher is required in the passenger compartments, it should be located near the cabin crew member's station, where provided.

(d) Where two or more hand fire extinguishers are required in the passenger compartments and their location is not otherwise dictated by consideration of (a), an extinguisher should be located near each end of the cabin with the remainder distributed throughout the cabin as evenly as is practicable.

(e) Unless an extinguisher is clearly visible, its location should be indicated by a placard or sign. Appropriate symbols may also be used to supplement such a placard or sign.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.210 Marking of break-in points

MARKINGS – COLOUR AND CORNERS

(a) The colour of the markings should be red or yellow and, if necessary, should be outlined in white to contrast with the background.

(b) If the corner markings are more than 2 m apart, intermediate lines 9 cm x 3 cm should be inserted so that there is no more than 2 m between adjacent markings.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT BATTERIES

Batteries used in the ELTs should be replaced (or recharged, if the battery is rechargeable) when the equipment has been in use for more than 1 cumulative hour, and also when 50% of their useful life (or for rechargeable, 50% of their useful life of charge), as established by the equipment manufacturer, has expired. The new expiry date for the replacement (or recharged) battery should be legibly marked on the outside of the equipment. The battery useful life (or useful life of charge) requirements of this paragraph do not apply to batteries (such as water-activated batteries) that are essentially unaffected during probable storage intervals.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.H.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TYPES OF ELTs AND GENERAL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(a) Point (a) of AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.280 lists the applicable types of ELTs.

(b) To minimise the possibility of damage in the event of a crash impact, the automatic ELT should be rigidly fixed to the aircraft structure, as far aft as is practicable, with its antenna and connections arranged so as to maximise the probability of the signal being transmitted after a crash.

(c) Any ELT carried should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III and should be registered with the national agency responsible for initiating search and rescue or other nominated agency.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TERMINOLOGY

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.280 provides explanations of terms used in point NCC.IDE.H.215 and in the related AMC.

GM2 NCC.IDE.H.215 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE

The guidance provided in GM2 CAT.IDE.H.280 is also applicable to point NCC.IDE.H.215.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.225(a) Life-jackets

ACCESSIBILITY

The life-jacket should be accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, with a safety belt or restraint system fastened.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.225(b) Life-jackets

ELECTRIC ILLUMINATION

The means of electric illumination should be a survivor locator light as defined in the applicable ETSO issued by the EASA or equivalent material acceptable to the CAAT.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.225 Life-jackets

SEAT CUSHIONS

Seat cushions are not considered to be flotation devices.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.226 Crew survival suits

ESTIMATING SURVIVAL TIME

(a) Introduction

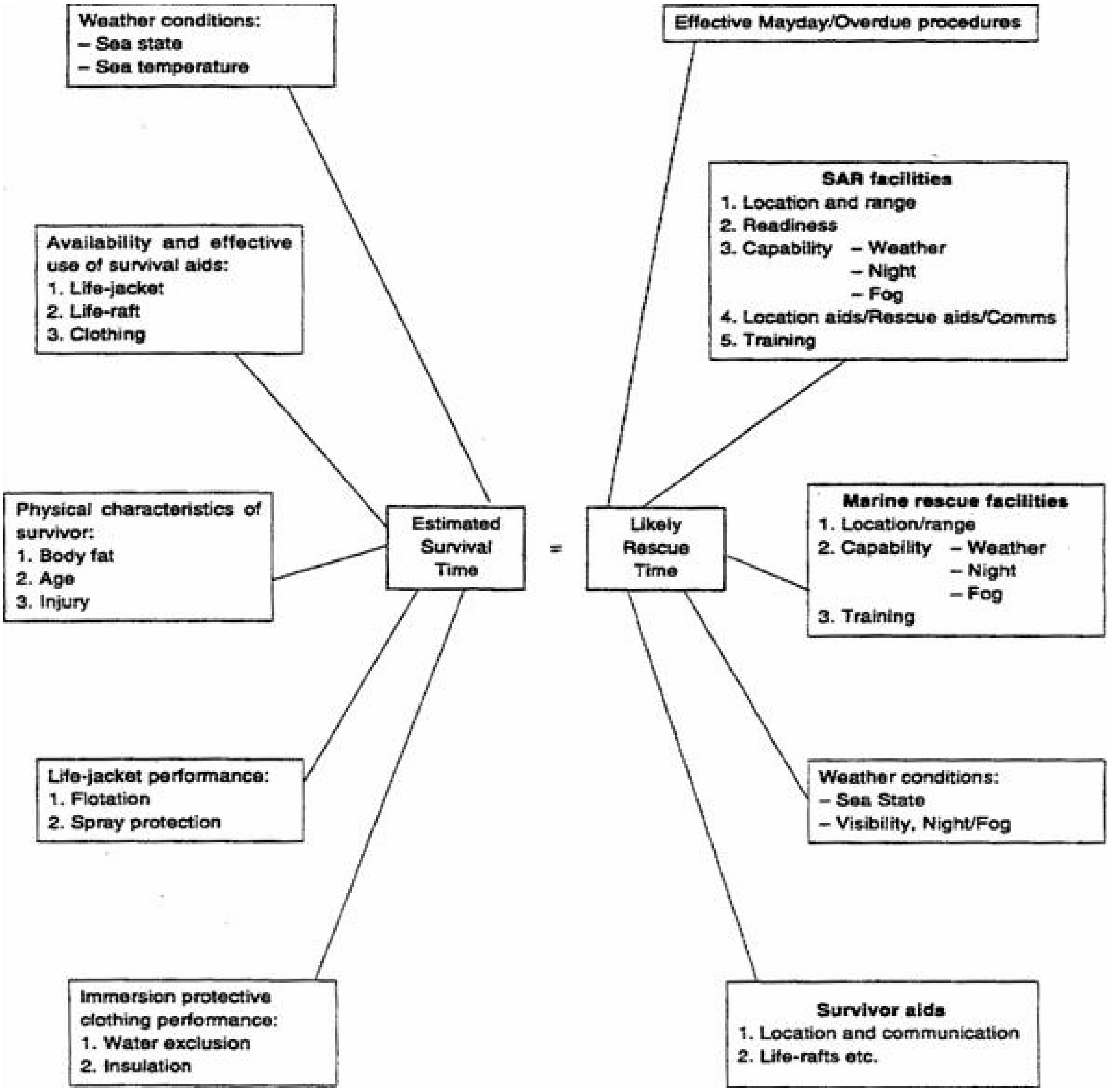
(1) A person accidentally immersed in cold seas (typically offshore Northern Europe) will have a better chance of survival if he/she is wearing an effective survival suit in addition to a life-jacket. By wearing the survival suit, he/she can slow down the rate which his/her body temperature falls and, consequently, protect himself/herself from the greater risk of drowning brought about by incapacitation due to hypothermia.

(2) The complete survival suit system — suit, life-jacket and clothes worn under the suit — should be able to keep the wearer alive long enough for the rescue services to find and recover him/her. In practice the limit is about 3 hours. If a group of persons in the water cannot be rescued within this time, they are likely to have become so scattered and separated that location will be extremely difficult, especially in the rough water typical of Northern European sea areas. If it is expected that in water protection could be required for periods greater than 3 hours, improvements should, rather, be sought in the search and rescue procedures than in the immersion suit protection.

(b) Survival times

(1) The aim should be to ensure that a person in the water can survive long enough to be rescued, i.e. the survival time should be greater than the likely rescue time. The factors affecting both times are shown in Figure 1. The figure emphasises that survival time is influenced by many factors, physical and human. Some of the factors are relevant to survival in cold water and some are relevant in water at any temperature.

Figure 1: The survival equation



(2) Broad estimates of likely survival times for the thin individual offshore are given in Table 1 below. As survival time is significantly affected by the prevailing weather conditions at the time of immersion, the Beaufort wind scale has been used as an indicator of these surface conditions.

Table 1: Timescale within which the most vulnerable individuals are likely to succumb to the prevailing conditions.

Clothing assembly	Beaufort wind force	Times within which the most vulnerable individuals are likely to drown	
		(water temp 5 °C)	(water temp 13 °C)
Working clothes (no immersion suit)	0 – 2	Within ¾ hour	Within 1 ¼ hours
	3 – 4	Within ½ hour	Within ½ hour
	5 and above	Significantly less than ½ hour	Significantly less than ½ hour
Immersion suit worn over working clothes (with leakage inside suit)	0 – 2	May well exceed 3 hours	May well exceed 3 hours
	3 – 4	Within 2 ¾ hours	May well exceed 3 hours
	5 and above	Significantly less than 2 ¾ hours. May well exceed 1 hour	May well exceed 3 hours

(3) Consideration should also be given to escaping from the helicopter itself should it submerge or invert in the water. In this case, escape time is limited to the length of time the occupants can hold their breath. The breath holding time can be greatly reduced by the effect of cold shock. Cold shock is caused by the sudden drop in skin temperature on immersion, and is characterised by a gasp reflex and uncontrolled breathing. The urge to breath rapidly becomes overwhelming and, if still submerged, the individual will inhale water resulting in drowning. Delaying the onset of cold shock by wearing an immersion suit will extend the available escape time from a submerged helicopter.

(4) The effects of water leakage and hydrostatic compression on the insulation quality of clothing are well recognised. In a nominally dry system the insulation is provided by still air trapped within the clothing fibres and between the layers of suit and clothes. It has been observed that many systems lose some of their insulating capacity either because the clothes under the 'waterproof' survival suit get wet to some extent or because of hydrostatic compression of the whole assembly. As a result of water leakage and compression, survival times will be shortened. The wearing of warm clothing under the suit is recommended.

(5) Whatever type of survival suit and other clothing is provided, it should not be forgotten that significant heat loss can occur from the head.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.227 Life-rafts, survival ELTs and survival equipment on extended overwater flights

LIFE-RAFTS AND EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING DISTRESS SIGNALS

(a) Each required life-raft should conform to the following specifications:

  (1) be of an approved design and stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in an emergency;

  (2) be radar conspicuous to standard airborne radar equipment;

  (3) when carrying more than one life-raft on board, at least 50 % of the rafts should be able to be deployed by the crew while seated at their normal station, where necessary by remote control; and

  (4) life-rafts that are not deployable by remote control or by the crew should be of such weight as to permit handling by one person. 40 kg should be considered a maximum weight.

(b) Each required life-raft should contain at least the following:

  (1) one approved survivor locator light;

  (2) one approved visual signalling device;

  (3) one canopy (for use as a sail, sunshade or rain catcher) or other means to protect occupants from the elements;

  (4) one radar reflector;

  (5) one 20 m retaining line designed to hold the life-raft near the helicopter but to release it if the helicopter becomes totally submerged;

  (6) one sea anchor; and

  (7) one survival kit, appropriately equipped for the route to be flown, which should contain at least the following:

    (i) one life-raft repair kit;

    (ii) one bailing bucket;

    (iii) one signalling mirror;

    (iv) one police whistle;

    (v) one buoyant raft knife;

    (vi) one supplementary means of inflation;

    (vii) sea sickness tablets;

    (viii) one first-aid kit;

    (ix) one portable means of illumination;

    (x) 500 ml of pure water and one sea water desalting kit; and

    (xi) one comprehensive illustrated survival booklet in an appropriate language.

AMC 1 NCC.IDE.H.227 (b)(3) Life rafts, survival ELTs, and survival equipment on extended overwater flights

SURVIVAL ELT

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.300(b)(3) & CAT.IDE.H.305(b) provides the types of ELT that may be installed on a required life raft

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.230 Survival equipment

ADDITIONAL SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT

(a) The following additional survival equipment should be carried when required:

 (1) 500 ml of water for each four, or fraction of four, persons on board;

 (2) one knife;

 (3) first-aid equipment; and

 (4) one set of air/ground codes.

(b) In addition, when polar conditions are expected, the following should be carried:

 (1) a means of melting snow;

 (2) one snow shovel and one ice saw;

 (3) sleeping bags for use by 1/3 of all persons on board and space blankets for the remainder or space blankets for all passengers on board; and

 (4) one arctic/polar suit for each crew member carried.

(c) If any item of equipment contained in the above list is already carried on board the aircraft in accordance with another requirement, there is no need for this to be duplicated.

AMC2 NCC.IDE.H.230 Survival equipment

SURVIVAL ELT

An ELT(AP) may be used to replace one required ELT(S) provided that it meets the ELT(S) requirements. A water-activated ELT(S) is not an ELT(AP).

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.230 Survival equipment

SIGNALLING EQUIPMENT

The signalling equipment for making distress signals is described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air.

GM2 NCC.IDE.H.230 Survival equipment

AREAS IN WHICH SEARCH AND RESCUE WOULD BE ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT

The expression 'areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult' should be interpreted, in this context, as meaning:

(a) areas so designated by the CAAT responsible for managing search and rescue; or

(b) areas that are largely uninhabited and where:

 (1) the authority referred to in (a) has not published any information to confirm whether search and rescue would be or would not be especially difficult; and

(2) the authority referred to in (a) does not, as a matter of policy, designate areas as being especially difficult for search and rescue.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.232 Helicopters certificated for operating on water — Miscellaneous equipment

INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA

International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea are those that were published by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in 1972.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.235 All helicopters on flight over water — ditching

The considerations of AMC1 SPA.HOFO.165(d) should apply in respect of emergency flotation equipment.

GENERAL

(a) A headset consists of a communication device that includes two earphones to receive and a microphone to transmit audio signals to the helicopter's communication system. To comply with the minimum performance requirements, the earphones and microphone should match the communication system's characteristics and the flight crew compartment environment. The headset should be adequately adjustable in order to fit the flight crew's head. Headset boom microphones should be of the noise cancelling type.

(b) If the intention is to utilise noise cancelling earphones, the operator should ensure that the earphones do not attenuate any aural warnings or sounds necessary for alerting the flight crew on matters related to the safe operation of the helicopter.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.235 All helicopters on flights over water — ditching

Sea state should be an integral part of ditching information

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.240 Headset

GENERAL

The term 'headset' includes any aviation helmet incorporating headphones and microphone worn by a flight crew member.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.245 Radio communication equipment

APPLICABLE AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

For helicopters being operated under European air traffic control, the applicable airspace requirements include the Single European Sky legislation.

GM2.NCC.IDE.H.245 Radio communication equipment

Information on the performance-based communication and surveillance (PBCS) concept and guidance material on its implementation are contained in the Performance-based Communication and Surveillance (PBCS) Manual (ICAO Document 9869)

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.250 Navigation equipment

AIRCRAFT ELIGIBILITY FOR PBN SPECIFICATION NOT REQUIRING SPECIFIC APPROVAL

(a) The performance of the aircraft is usually stated in the AFM.

(b) Where such a reference cannot be found in the AFM, other information provided by the aircraft manufacturer as TC holder, the STC holder or the design organisation having a privilege to approve minor changes may be considered.

(c) The following documents are considered acceptable sources of information:

(1) AFM, supplements thereto and documents directly referenced in the AFM;

(2) FCOM or similar document;

(3) Service Bulletin or Service Letter issued by the TC holder or STC holder;

(4) approved design data or data issued in support of a design change approval;

(5) any other formal document issued by the TC or STC holders stating compliance with PBN specifications, AMC, Advisory Circulars (AC) or similar documents issued by the State of Design; and

(6) written evidence obtained from the State of Design.

(d) Equipment qualification data, in itself, is not sufficient to assess the PBN capabilities of the aircraft, since the latter depend on installation and integration.

(e) As some PBN equipment and installations may have been certified prior to the publication of the PBN Manual and the adoption of its terminology for the navigation specifications, it is not always possible to find a clear statement of aircraft PBN capability in the AFM. However, aircraft eligibility for certain PBN specifications can rely on the aircraft performance certified for PBN procedures and routes prior to the publication of the PBN Manual.

(f) Below, various references are listed which may be found in the AFM or other acceptable documents (see listing above) in order to consider the aircraft's eligibility for a specific PBN specification if the specific term is not used.

(g) RNAV 5

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNAV 5 operations.

(i) B-RNAV;

(ii) RNAV 1;

(iii) RNP APCH;

(iv) RNP 4;

(v) A-RNP;

(vi) AMC 20-4;

(vii) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 2 (TGL 2);

(viii) JAA AMJ 20X2;

(ix) FAA AC 20-130A for en route operations;

(x) FAA AC 20-138 for en route operations; and

(xi) FAA AC 90-96.

(h) RNAV 1/RNAV 2

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNAV 1/RNAV 2 operations.

(i) RNAV 1;

(ii) PRNAV;

(iii) US RNAV type A;

(iv) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification;

(v) FAA AC 90-100A;

(vi) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 10 Rev1 (TGL 10); and

(vii) FAA AC 90-100.

(2) However, if position determination is exclusively computed based on VOR-DME, the aircraft is not eligible for RNAV 1/RNAV 2 operations.

(i) RNP 1/RNP 2 continental

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 1/RNP 2 continental operations.

(i) A-RNP;

(ii) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification; and

(iii) FAA AC 90-105.

(2) Alternatively, if a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above and position determination is primarily based on GNSS, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 1/RNP 2 continental operations. However, in these cases, loss of GNSS implies loss of RNP 1/RNP 2 capability.

(i) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 10 (TGL 10) (any revision); and

(ii) FAA AC 90-100.

(j) RNP APCH — LNAV minima

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV operations.

(i) A-RNP;

(ii) AMC 20-27;

(iii) AMC 20-28;

(iv) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification; and

(v) FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification.

(2) Alternatively, if a statement of compliance with RNP 0.3 GNSS approaches in accordance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV operations.

Any limitation such as 'within the US National Airspace' may be ignored since RNP APCH procedures are assumed to meet the same ICAO criteria around the world.

(i) JAA TEMPORARY GUIDANCE MATERIAL, LEAFLET NO. 3 (TGL 3);

(ii) AMC 20-4;

(iii) FAA AC 20-130A; and

(iv) FAA AC 20-138.

(k) RNP APCH — LNAV/VNAV minima

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV/VNAV operations.

(i) A-RNP;

(ii) AMC 20-27 with Baro VNAV;

(iii) AMC 20-28;

(iv) FAA AC 20-138; and

(v) FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification.

(2) Alternatively, if a statement of compliance with FAA AC 20-129 is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, and the aircraft complies with the requirements and limitations of EASA SIB 2014-04[1], the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LNAV/VNAV operations. Any limitation such as 'within the US National Airspace' may be ignored since RNP APCH procedures are assumed to meet the same ICAO criteria around the world.

(l) RNP APCH — LPV minima

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP APCH — LPV operations.

(i) AMC 20-28;

(ii) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification; and

(iii) FAA AC 90-107.

(2) For aircraft that have a TAWS Class A installed and do not provide Mode-5 protection on an LPV approach, the DH is limited to 250 ft.

(m) RNAV 10

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNAV 10 operations.

(i) RNP 10;

[1] http://ad.easa.europa.eu/ad/2014-04

(ii) FAA AC 20-138 for the appropriate navigation specification;

(iii) AMC 20-12;

(iv) FAA Order 8400.12 (or later revision); and

(v) FAA AC 90-105.

(n) RNP 4

(1) If a statement of compliance with any of the following specifications or standards is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 4 operations.

(i) FAA AC 20-138B or later, for the appropriate navigation specification;

(ii) FAA Order 8400.33; and

(iii) FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification.

(o) RNP 2 oceanic

(1) If a statement of compliance with FAA AC 90-105 for the appropriate navigation specification is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 2 oceanic operations.

(2) If the aircraft has been assessed eligible for RNP 4, the aircraft is eligible for RNP 2 oceanic.

(p) Special features

(1) RF in terminal operations (used in RNP 1 and in the initial segment of the RNP APCH)

(i) If a statement of demonstrated capability to perform an RF leg, certified in accordance with any of the following specifications or standards, is found in the acceptable documentation as listed above, the aircraft is eligible for RF in terminal operations.

(A) AMC 20-26; and

(B) FAA AC 20-138B or later.

(ii) If there is a reference to RF and a reference to compliance with AC 90-105, then the aircraft is eligible for such operations.

(q) Other considerations

(1) In all cases, the limitations in the AFM need to be checked, in particular the use of AP or FD which can be required to reduce the FTE primarily for RNP APCH, RNAV 1, and RNP 1.

(2) Any limitation such as 'within the US National Airspace' may be ignored since RNP APCH procedures are assumed to meet the same ICAO criteria around the world.

GM2 NCC.IDE.H.250 Navigation equipment

GENERAL

(a) The PBN specifications for which the aircraft complies with the relevant airworthiness criteria are set out in the AFM, together with any limitations to be observed.

(b) Because functional and performance requirements are defined for each navigation specification, an aircraft approved for an RNP specification is not automatically approved for all RNAV specifications. Similarly, an aircraft approved for an RNP or RNAV specification having a stringent accuracy requirement (e.g. RNP 0.3 specification) is not automatically approved for a navigation specification having a less stringent accuracy requirement (e.g. RNP 4).

RNP 4

(c) For RNP 4, at least two LRNSs, capable of navigating to RNP 4, and listed in the AFM, may be operational at the entry point of the RNP 4 airspace. If an item of equipment required for RNP 4 operations is unserviceable, then the flight crew may consider an alternate route or diversion for repairs. For multi-sensor systems, the AFM may permit entry if one GNSS sensor is lost after departure, provided one GNSS and one inertial sensor remain available.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.255 Transponder

SSR TRANSPONDER

(a) The secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponders of helicopters being operated under European air traffic control should comply with any applicable Single European Sky legislation.

(b) If the Single European Sky legislation is not applicable, the SSR transponders should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of Volume IV of ICAO Annex 10.

AMC1 NCC.IDE.H.260 Management of aeronautical databases

AERONAUTICAL DATABASES

When the operator of an aircraft uses an aeronautical database that supports an airborne navigation application as a primary means of navigation used to meet the airspace usage requirements, the database provider should be a Type 2 DAT provider certified in accordance with the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions .

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.260 Management of aeronautical databases

AERONAUTICAL DATABASE APPLICATIONS

(a) Applications using aeronautical databases for which Type 2 DAT providers should be certified in accordance with the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions.

(b) The certification of a Type 2 DAT provider in accordance with the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions ensures data integrity and compatibility with the certified aircraft application/equipment.

GM2 NCC.IDE.H.260 Management of aeronautical databases

TIMELY DISTRIBUTION

The operator should distribute current and unaltered aeronautical databases to all aircraft requiring them in accordance with the validity period of the databases or in accordance with a procedure established in the operations manual if no validity period is defined.

GM3 NCC.IDE.H.260 Management of aeronautical databases

STANDARDS FOR AERONAUTICAL DATABASES AND DAT PROVIDERS

(a) A 'Type 2 DAT provider' is an organisation as defined in the relevant Kingdom of Thailand Civil Aviation Regulation for providers of air traffic management/air navigation services and other air traffic management functions.

(b) Equivalent to a certified 'Type 2 DAT provider' is defined in any Aviation Safety Agreement between the Kingdom of Thailand and a Foreign Country, including any Technical Implementation Procedures, or any Working Arrangements between the CAAT and the competent authority of a foreign country.

GM1 NCC.IDE.H.265 Surveillance Equipment

Information on surveillance equipment is contained in the Aeronautical Surveillance Manual (ICAO Document 9924)

Information on RSP specifications for performance-based surveillance is contained in the Performance-based Communication and Surveillance (PBCS) (ICAO Document 9869)